



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

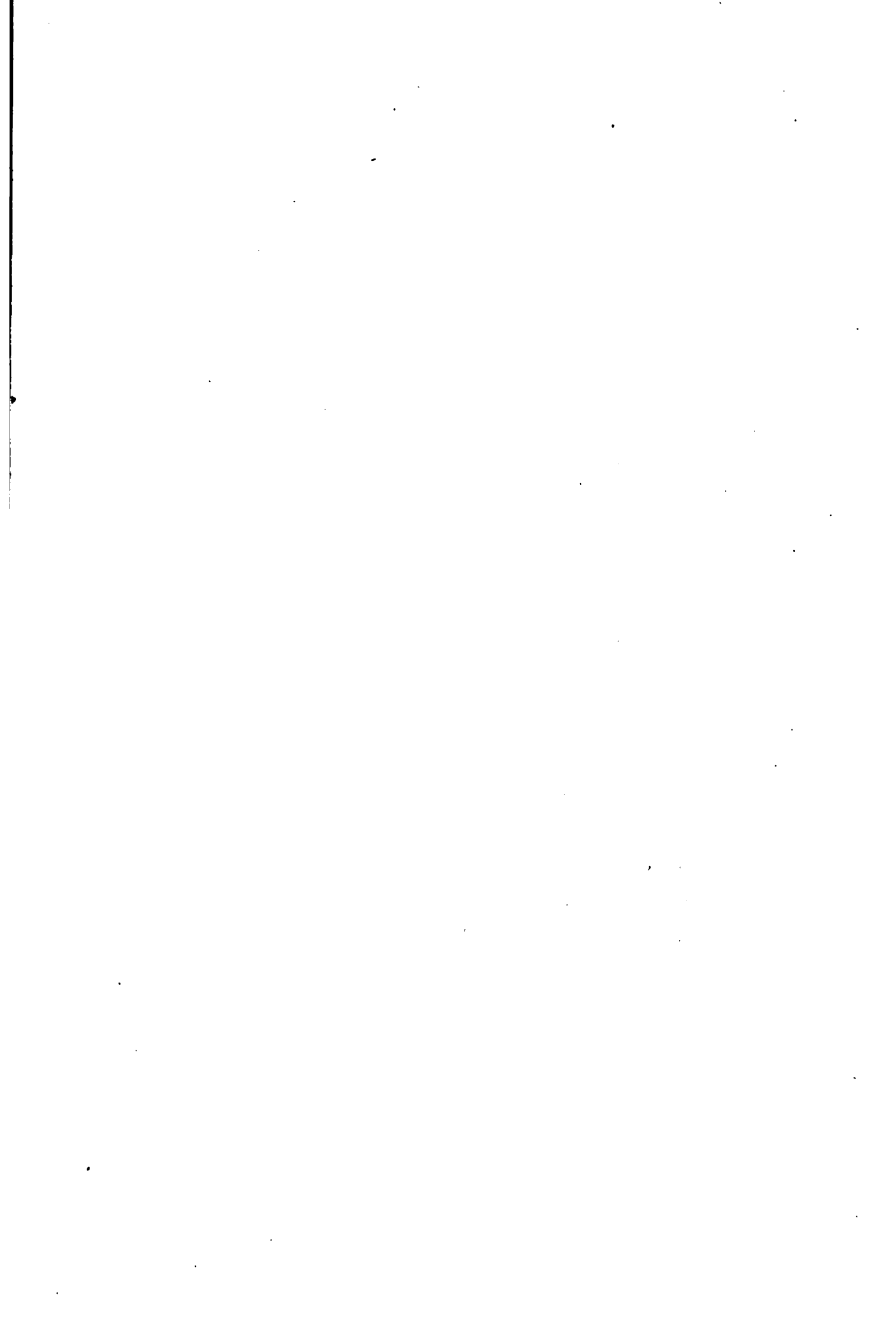
T 919.19.535

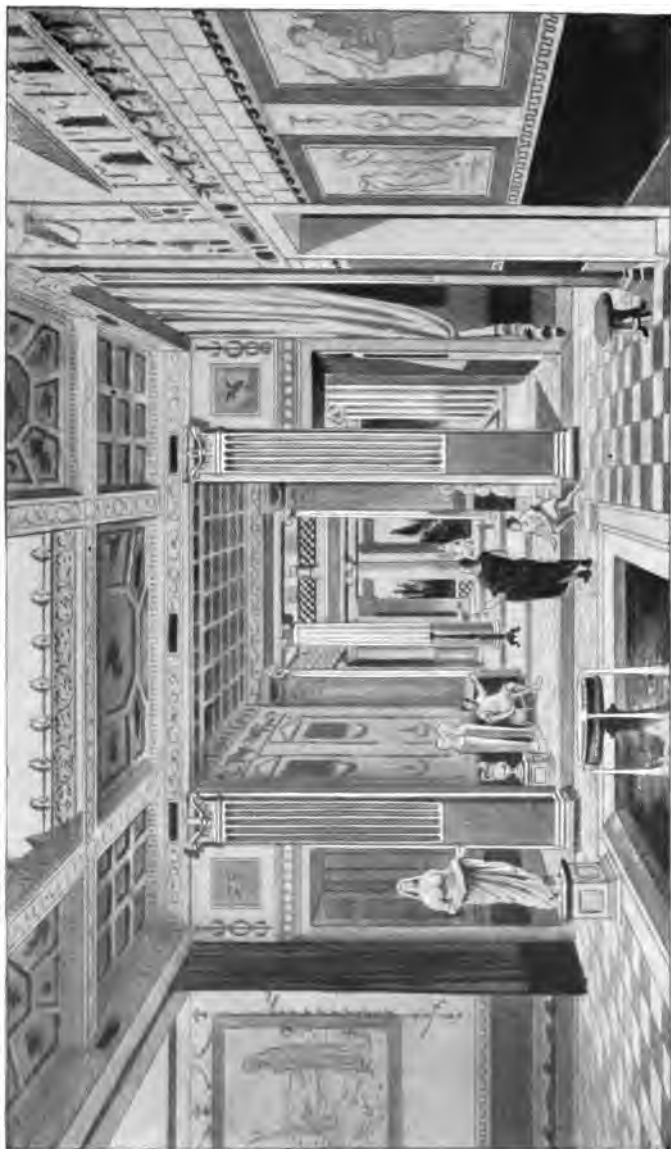


Harvard College Library
THE GIFT OF
GINN AND COMPANY



3 2044 097 074 447





DOMŪS RŌMĀNAE PERISTYLIUM

INTRODUCTION TO LATIN

BY

HENRY S. LUPOLD

**INSTRUCTOR IN LATIN, NORTH HIGH SCHOOL
COLUMBUS, OHIO**

Part Two

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO

Edue T 919.19.535

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
GINN & COMPANY
MARCH 17, 1927

COPYRIGHT, 1919,
BY D. C. HEATH & CO.

2 L 1

Printed in U. S. A.

PREFACE

IN the preparation of this book the author has aimed to have the subject matter logically follow that contained in Part I. This book presents only the essentials in a clear and simple form, but equips the pupil to read his second year Latin with ease and understanding.

The lessons are so arranged that each one is complete in itself, and none so long as to require that it be divided. Some lessons contain forms to be learned, a rule of syntax with model sentences, and exercises both from Latin into English and from English into Latin that afford practice in the application of the forms and rule. Many lessons, however, contain only forms and a vocabulary to be learned, or a rule with model sentences and a vocabulary. Such lessons are followed by lessons containing exercises from Latin into English and vice versa for practice in application. The exercises consist in every instance of complete sentences.

Review lessons are frequent. They embrace all the new Latin words, English derivatives, forms, etc. Some of these lessons contain Latin sentences using the different constructions studied during a certain period of time.

The consideration of the infinitive, participle, imperative and subjunctive moods is deferred until the pupil may be expected to be thoroughly at home in his use of the indicative.

Irregular verbs are left until the pupil has become thoroughly familiar with regular verbs.

Conditional sentences are treated only in their simplest forms, not with a view of exhausting the subject, but with an effort to make the distinctions clear.

The connected reading exercises have been prepared with great care, so that few grammatical principles and forms are used before they have been explained in the lessons. In instances where they have not been explained, they are provided for by notes.

The arrangement of the subject matter is rational, logical and adapted to the ability of the eighth grade pupil.

Following the one hundred forty-four lessons there are several pages of Latin phrases common in English, colloquial phrases, phrases from Caesar, songs, poems, fables, Roman history stories, etc., to be used at the teacher's discretion during the year.

Following this supplementary matter there is a summary of the grammatical forms in full and rules of syntax for convenience of reference.

In using this text the pupil thoroughly familiarizes himself with a working vocabulary of about 500 new words and with the use of many new English derivatives. He also lays for himself a sure foundation of forms and fundamental constructions necessary to make his second year Latin easy and successful.

HENRY S. LUPOLD.

COLUMBUS, OHIO.

CONTENTS

LESSON	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	1
I. MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION	4
II. NOUNS IN -ius AND -ium. VOCATIVE CASE .	5
III. SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS IN -er AND -ir .	7
IV. SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES IN -er .	8
V. ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT . .	10
VI. REVIEW OF SECOND DECLENSION . . .	11
VII. VERBS — SECOND CONJUGATION . . .	12
VIII. EXERCISE	14
IX. READING LESSON — Carolus et Pōma . .	15
X. VOCABULARY REVIEW	16
XI. SECOND CONJUGATION. PERFECT TENSES .	17
XII. EXERCISE	19
XIII. THIRD DECLENSION	20
XIV. THIRD DECLENSION. LINGUAL STEMS . .	22
XV. EXERCISE	24
XVI. THIRD DECLENSION. PALATAL STEMS. DURA- TION, ACCUSATIVE	25
XVII. EXERCISE	26
XVIII. THIRD DECLENSION. LIQUID STEMS . .	27
XIX. EXERCISE	30
XX. THIRD DECLENSION. SIBILANT STEMS . .	31
XXI. REVIEW. THIRD DECLENSION. CONSONANT STEMS	32

LESSON	PAGE
XXII. ABLATIVE OF MANNER	33
XXIII. READING LESSON — The Romans Conquer the Germans	34
XXIV. VOCABULARY REVIEW	35
XXV. VERBS. SECOND CONJUGATION. PASSIVE VOICE	36
XXVI. VOCABULARY	39
XXVII. VERBS. SECOND CONJUGATION. PERFECT PASSIVE SYSTEM	40
XXVIII. EXERCISE	42
XXIX. THIRD DECLENSION. STEMS IN -i	43
XXX. EXERCISE	46
XXXI. THIRD DECLENSION. STEMS IN -i (Continued)	47
XXXII. THIRD DECLENSION. STEMS IN -i (Continued)	48
XXXIII. THIRD DECLENSION. GENDER. IRREGULAR NOUNS	50
XXXIV. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. STEMS IN -i	51
XXXV. EXERCISE	53
XXXVI. READING LESSON — A Roman Invasion	54
XXXVII. VOCABULARY REVIEW	55
XXXVIII. VERBS. THIRD CONJUGATION. ACTIVE	57
XXXIX. EXERCISE	59
XL. VERBS. THIRD CONJUGATION. PERFECT SYS- TEM ACTIVE	60
XLI. EXERCISE	62
XLII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	63
XLIII. EXERCISE	65
XLIV. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)	66
XLV. EXERCISE	68

CONTENTS

vii

LESSON	PAGE
XLVI. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	69
XLVII. EXERCISE	71
XLVIII. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS	72
XLIX. EXERCISE	73
L. VERBS. THIRD CONJUGATION. PASSIVE	74
LI. EXERCISE	76
LII. VERBS. THIRD CONJUGATION. PASSIVE. PERFECT SYSTEM	77
LIII. EXERCISE	80
LIV. DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS	81
LV. READING LESSON — Marius Recalled into Italy	82
LVI. VOCABULARY REVIEW	83
LVII. THE FOURTH DECLENSION. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE	84
LVIII. EXERCISE	87
LIX. FIFTH DECLENSION. ABLATIVE OF TIME	88
LX. EXERCISE	90
LXI. EXPRESSION OF PLACE, LOCATIVE CASE	91
LXII. CONJUGATION OF Sum. PERFECT SYSTEM. DATIVE OF POSSESSOR	93
LXIII. QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION	96
LXIV. NUMERALS. GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE	98
LXV. EXERCISE	101
LXVI. REVIEW LESSON	102
LXVII. VERBS. FOURTH CONJUGATION. ACTIVE	103
LXVIII. EXERCISE	106
LXIX. VERBS. FOURTH CONJUGATION. ACTIVE. PERFECT SYSTEM	107

LESSON	PAGE
LXX. EXERCISE	109
LXXI. CONVERSATIONAL EXERCISE	110
LXXII. VOCABULARY REVIEW	111
LXXIII. THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES	112
LXXIV. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS	114
LXXV. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS	116
LXXVI. VERBS. FOURTH CONJUGATION. PASSIVE	118
LXXVII. EXERCISE	120
LXXVIII. VERB. FOURTH CONJUGATION. PASSIVE PERFECT SYSTEM	121
LXXIX. EXERCISE	123
LXXX. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS	124
LXXXI. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS (Continued)	126
LXXXII. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS (Continued)	128
LXXXIII. READING LESSON — Caesar in Gaul	130
LXXXIV. VERBS. THIRD CONJUGATION IN -io. ACTIVE	130
LXXXV. EXERCISE	134
LXXXVI. INTERROGATIVES. GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION	135
LXXXVII. EXERCISE	137
LXXXVIII. RELATIVE PRONOUNS	138
LXXXIX. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. DECLENSION OF <i>Deus</i>	140
XC. EXERCISE	143
XCI. VERBS. THIRD CONJUGATION IN -io. PASSIVE. DATIVE OF PURPOSE	144
XCII. EXERCISE	147
XCIII. READING LESSON — A Roman Battle	148
XCIV. VOCABULARY REVIEW	149
XCV. PRESENT INFINITIVES. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE	150

CONTENTS

ix

LESSON	PAGE
XCVI. EXERCISE	152
XCVII. PERFECT AND FUTURE INFINITIVES. INDIRECT DISCOURSE	153
XCVIII. EXERCISE	156
XCIX. ACTIVE PARTICIPLES	157
C. THE GERUND	159
CI. PASSIVE PARTICIPLES	161
CII. EXERCISE	163
CIII. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. DATIVE OF AGENT	164
CIV. EXERCISE	167
CV. THE SUPINE. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION .	168
CVI. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	170
CVII. REVIEW	172
CVIII. READING LESSON—Roman Vengeance .	173
CIX. VERBS. IMPERATIVE MOOD, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS	174
CX. VERBS. IMPERATIVE MOOD, THIRD CONJU- GATION	176
CXI. VERBS. IMPERATIVE MOOD, FOURTH CONJU- GATION, AND Sum	177
CXII. VERBS. SUBJUNCTIVE OF FIRST CONJUGATION VERBS	179
CXIII. OPTATIVE (Wish) SUBJUNCTIVE	182
CXIV. VERBS. SUBJUNCTIVE OF SECOND CONJUGA- TION VERBS	183
CXV. HORTATORY OR VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE .	185
CXVI. VERBS. SUBJUNCTIVE OF THIRD CONJUGA- TION VERBS	187
CXVII. DELIBERATIVE (DUBITATIVE) SUBJUNCTIVE .	191

LESSON	PAGE
CXVIII. VERBS. SUBJUNCTIVE OF FOURTH CONJUGATION VERBS AND OF <i>Sum</i>	192
CXIX. REVIEW SENTENCES	195
CXX. SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE. THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES.	196
CXXI. SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE. THE SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER VERBS OF FEARING .	199
CXXII. SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT	201
CXXIII. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS . .	203
CXXIV. READING LESSON — A Leader's Address to His Men	205
CXXV. VOCABULARY REVIEW	205
CXXVI. IRREGULAR VERBS. <i>Possum</i> AND OTHER COMPOUNDS OF <i>Sum</i>	207
CXXVII. IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)	210
CXXVIII. IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)	212
CXXIX. IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)	215
CXXX. IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)	217
CXXXI. IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)	220
CXXXII. IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)	223
CXXXIII. IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)	226
CXXXIV. DEPONENT VERBS	229
CXXXV. EXERCISE	234
CXXXVI. THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS	235
CXXXVII. REVIEW SENTENCES	237
CXXXVIII. READING LESSON — Charles the Farmer .	238
CXXXIX. SUBJUNCTIVE WITH <i>Cum</i>	239
CXL. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES OF FACT	241
CXLI. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES OF DOUBT . . .	243
CXLII. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT	244

CONTENTS

xi

LESSON	PAGE
CXLIII. REVIEW SENTENCES	246
CXLIV. VOCABULARY REVIEW	247
LATIN PHRASES COMMON IN ENGLISH	249
COLLOQUIAL PHRASES	250
PHRASES FROM CAESAR	251
SONGS	252
FABLES AND STORIES	255
SUMMARY	263
RULES OF SYNTAX	306
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	313
VOCABULARY FOR SUPPLEMENTARY MATTER	334
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	338





TOGA VIRILIS
(à fronte visa)



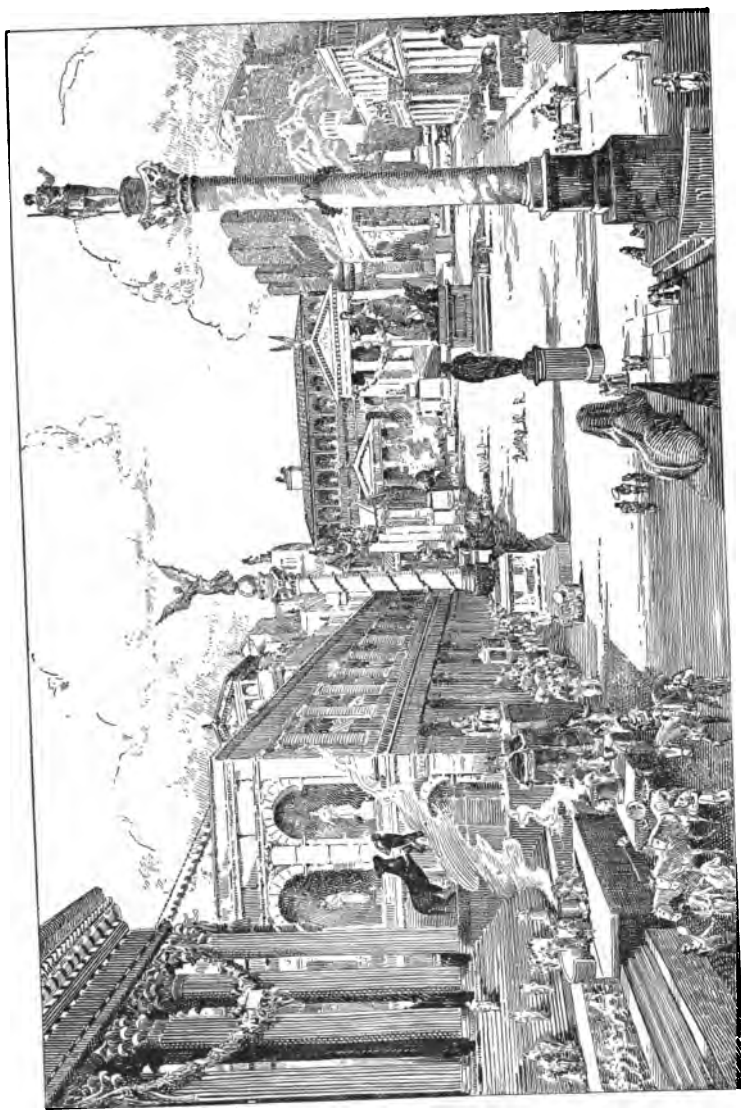
TOGA VIRILIS
(visa à tergō)



MILES LEGIŌNĀRIUS



TOGA PRAETEXTA
(puerilis)



THE FORUM AT ROME

INTRODUCTION TO LATIN

PART II

ALPHABET

Latin has no *w* or *j*.

The vowels are the letters *a, e, i, o, u*, and sometimes *y*. All the other letters are called consonants.

I is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. It is a consonant when it stands before a vowel in the same syllable.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

Vowels

(Long)	(Short)
ā as in <i>father</i>	a like the first <i>a</i> in <i>aha</i>
ē as in <i>prey</i>	e as in <i>step</i>
ī as in <i>machine</i>	i as in <i>pin</i>
ō as in <i>old</i>	o as in <i>obey</i>
ū as <i>oo</i> in <i>moon</i>	u as <i>oo</i> in <i>foot</i>

Diphthongs

Diphthongs are combinations of two vowels that are pronounced as one sound.

ae like *ai* in *aisle*
oe like *oi* in *coin*
au like *ou* in *house*
ui is almost like *we*
eu as in *feud*
ei as in *eight*

Consonants

Consonants have the same sound as in English except that **c** and **g** are always hard, as in *come* and *give*.

i consonant is like *y* in *yes*.

t is always like *t* in *time*.

v is like English *w* as in *wood*.

s is always like *s* in *sun*.

u followed by a vowel and after *q*, *g*, and sometimes *s*, is pronounced like Latin *v*.

x is like *ks* or the *x* in *extra*.

bs and **bt** are pronounced as *ps* and *pt*.

In **ch**, **ph**, and **th** the *h* is silent.

SYLLABLES

A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus **ae-di-fi-cō** has four syllables, **ca'-sa**, two.

When a word is divided into syllables, a single consonant is joined with the vowel following: **a-mī'-cus**.

If two or more consonants occur between vowels or diphthongs, the first consonant is put with the preceding vowel: **lau-dan'-tur**. But a consonant followed by *l* or *r* goes with the *l* or *r*: **a-gri'-co-la**, **pū'-bli-cus**.

Doubled consonants are separated: **pu-el'-la**.

The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

QUANTITY

Vowels are *long* (¯) or *short* (˘). The long vowels are marked in this book; unmarked vowels must be considered short. Diphthongs are long and are not marked.

A vowel is short before a final *m* or *t*, before *nd* or *nt*, and before final *l* or *r* in words of more than one syllable : **lau-dā'-bām**, **pa-rā'-bat**, **a-măn'-dus**, **por-tăn'-tur**, **a'-ni-măl**, **cū-rā'-mŭr**.

Vowels are long before *nf*, *ns*, *nx*, and *nct* : **in-fir'-mus**, **in'-su-la**, **săn'-xī**, **fŭnc'-tus**.

Syllables as well as vowels are either long or short.

A long syllable is one which contains a long vowel or diphthong, or one whose vowel is followed by two or more consonants : **nā-tŭ'-ra**, **nau'-ta**, **vo-can'-tur**.

A syllable is short if it ends in a short vowel : **dŏ'-mī-na**. But in the final syllable of a word the short vowel may be followed by a final consonant : **dŏ'-mī-năm**.

ACCENT

Words of two syllables accent the first, or penult : **fā'-ma**, **tu'-ba**.

Words of more than two syllables accent the penult when it is long, otherwise the antepenult : **ha-bi-tā'-re**, **do'-mi-na**.

The syllables **que**, *and* ; **-ve**, *or* ; and **-ne**, the sign of a question, called enclitics, are attached to the ends of words. The syllable before an enclitic is always accented : **nār-rat'-que**, **vo-cant'-ve**, **pro-pe-rat'-ne**.

NOTE. — Paradigms of first declension nouns, of second declension nouns, masculine and neuter, of adjectives of the first and second declensions, of first conjugation verbs, active and passive, and the rules of syntax, not discussed in this text, are found in the summary after the supplementary reading in this text. They are convenient for review.

Words used in the *Introduction to Latin*, Part I, may be found in the Latin-English vocabulary after the summary near the end of this text.

LESSON I

MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

Agricola bonus *aquam portat.*

Filia agricolae boni *fābulās nārrat.*

Nauta agricolae bonō *pecūniam dōnat.*

Puellae agricolam bonum *vocant.*

Servī ab agricolā bonō *laudantur.*

SINGULAR

Nom. **agricola bonus**

Gen. **agricolae boni**

Dat. **agricolae bonō**

Acc. **agricolam bonum**

Abl. **agricolā bonō**

Agricolae boni *patriam amant.*

Dōna agricolārum bonōrum *māgna sunt*

Puellae agricolis bonis *fābulās nārrant.*

Poēta agricolās bonōs *laudat.*

Pirātae cum agricolīs bonīs *nōn habitant.*

PLURAL

Nom. **agricolae boni**

Gen. **agricolārum bonōrum**

Dat. **agricolis bonis**

Acc. **agricolās bonōs**

Abl. **agricolis bonis**

When an adjective is used with a noun, it must show by its ending the same gender, number, and case. A masculine noun of the first declension takes a masculine adjective, which has the endings of the second declension.

VOCABULARY

Galba, -ae, m., *Galba*.pirāta, -ae, m., *pirate*.poēta, -ae, m., *poet*.

Decline :

1. Pīrāta malus.

2. Poēta clārus.

Write the Latin for the following :

1. Faithful sailor's.

2. With the wicked sailor.

3. Worthy poets (*accusative*).

4. Of the good farmers.

5. For the unfriendly pirate.

LESSON II

NOUNS IN -IUS AND -IUM. VOCATIVE CASE

Nouns of the second declension in -ius and -ium end in -ī in the genitive singular, not in -ii: *filius*, gen., *filī*; *praesidium*, gen., *praesi'dī*. These shortened genitive forms are accented on the syllable before the last, even if short. Adjectives are not thus contracted.

Filius, m., *son*.*Praesidium*, n., *garrison*.Base, *filī-*.Base, *praesidi-*.

SINGULAR

Nom. *filius**praesidium**Gen.* *filī**praesidī**Dat.* *filīō**praesidiō**Acc.* *filium**praesidium**Abl.* *filīō**praesidiō*

The plural is regular. Note that the -i of the base is lost only in the genitive singular.

VOCABULARY

aedificium, aedifi'cī, n., *building, edifice.*

filius, fili, m., *son.*

nūntius, nūntī, m., *messenger.*

praesidium, praesi'dī, n., *garrison, guard*

proelium, proeli, n., *battle.*

Decline :

1. Nūntius fīdus. 2. Proelium longum.

The vocative is the case of direct address. In Latin it is regularly like the nominative. The following are the exceptions :

1. Nouns of the second declension ending in -us like **dominus** have the vocative singular in -e, as **domine**, *O Master!*

2. Proper nouns ending in -ius and also the common noun **filius** form the vocative singular in the same manner as the genitive singular; hence, **Vergi'li** and **fili** may be either genitive singular or vocative singular.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Male serve. | 5. Clāre domine. |
| 2. Male fili. | 6. Multōrum proeliōrum. |
| 3. Malī fili. | 7. Bellī longī. |
| 4. Malī filiī. | 8. Ad proelia dūra. |

LESSON III

SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS
IN -ER AND -IR

	Puer, m., boy.	Base, puer-	Ager, m., field.	Base, agr-
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	puer	puerī	ager	agrī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	puerōrum	agrī	agrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	puerōs	agrum	agrōs
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs

In some words with bases ending in -r, the -e is inserted in the nominative singular only, for pronunciation. The genitive printed after a word in the vocabulary will show whether or not the e of the nominative appears in the other cases.

VOCABULARY

liber, librī, m., *book*.

magister, magistrī, m., *master, teacher*.

signifer, signi'ferī, m., *standard-bearer*.

vir, virī, m., *man*.

EXERCISE

Decline in Latin :

1. Strong standard-bearer.
2. New book.

Translate into English :

1. Nautae puerīs bonīs sagittās dōnant.
2. Ubi sunt librī puellae?

3. *Lēgātus virum fīdum laudāvit.*
4. *Sīgnifer sīgnum māgnum portāverat.*
5. *Pirātae malī in insulā habitābant.*

Translate into Latin :

1. The small boys wandered into the large forest.
2. The man's son is proud.
3. The good slaves will work in (their) ¹ masters' fields.
4. The teacher was praising the small boy.
5. Food had been prepared by the slave.

LESSON IV

SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES IN -ER

Adjectives of the first and second declensions with bases ending in -er have lost the termination -us in the nominative masculine singular.

Liber, libera, liberum, free, base, liber-

Pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful, base, pulchr-

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>liber</i>	<i>libera</i>	<i>liberum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>liberī</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>liberō</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>liberum</i>	<i>liberam</i>	<i>liberum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>liberō</i>	<i>liberā</i>	<i>liberō</i>

¹ Words in parenthesis are not to be translated.

	PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

	SINGULAR		
<i>Nom.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

	PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchris	pulchris	pulchris
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchris	pulchris	pulchris

NOTE.—The nominatives, feminine and neuter, show whether -er adjectives are declined like **liber** or **pulcher**.

VOCABULARY

asper, aspera, asperum, *rough, harsh*.

miser, misera, miserum, *wretched, unfortunate*

niger, nigra, nigrum, *black*.

piger, pigra, pigrum, *lazy*.

liberī, liberōrum, *m., children (lit., the freeborn or free members of a household)*.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Sumus liberī virī.
2. Fēmina misera est quia puerī pigrī sunt.
3. Via longa et aspera erat.
4. Multī puerī equōs nigrōs amant.
5. Agricolaē bonī filiābus¹ rosās pulchrās dōnāvērunt.

Translate into Latin :

1. The woman has given (her) son a new book.
2. The master of the slaves was harsh.
3. We had often praised the good sailor.
4. The slave is wretched because he is not free.
5. The farmer will have worked with the lazy slave.

LESSON V

ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT

Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question " By means of what? " " With what? "

Vir feram pilō necāvit.

The man killed the wild beast **with a javelin.**

Servī gladiīs pūgnābunt.

The slaves will fight **with swords.**

¹ The dative and ablative plural of the first declension nouns, **filia**, *daughter*, and **dea**, *goddess*, end in **-ābus** instead of **-is**.

VOCABULARY

arō, arāre, arāvi, arātus, *plow*.

dō, dare, dedi, datus, *give*.

gladius, gladi, m., *sword*.

Note the irregularities in the principal parts of dō. The stems are found in the regular way.

EXERCISE

Translate :

1. Agricola validus agrum equis arābat.
2. Tubā signum dabimus.
3. Rēgīna ad poētā clārum dōna portāverat.
4. Pīrātae malī nautās fidēs gladiis longīs necāvērunt.
5. Galba columbam sagittā vulnerāvit.

Translate into Latin :

1. The strong sailors will put the lazy pirates to flight with spears.
2. Famous poets will praise the beautiful queen.
3. The bad master fights with a javelin.
4. Galba had wounded the wild beast in the forest with an arrow.
5. The farmers were carrying grain on large wagons.

LESSON VI

REVIEW OF SECOND DECLENSION

Review constructions, declension of nouns and adjectives, and verb forms in the following exercise.

Translate into English :

1. Magister puerum bonum laudāvit.
2. Fīlius poētae timidus est.
3. Ubi est liber novus?
4. Nūntium fidum semper (*always*) cūrābimus.
5. Virī in vīcō frūmentum cēlābant.
6. Signifer ad bellum properābit.
7. Erant equī albī in agrō.
8. Cum servō miserō labōrābam.
9. Scūtum filī validum erat.
10. In templum pīctūrās pulchrās portāverimus.
11. Nauta liber filiābus fidīs pecūniam dedit.
12. Locum idōneum castrīs parvīs dēmōnstrāverat.
13. Forma rēgīnae pulchrae erat grāta oculīs dominārum.
14. Cūr pīlīs nōn pūgnāvistis?
15. Quem puer superbus culpat?

LESSON VII

VERBS — SECOND CONJUGATION

The same rules as to stem, tense sign, and personal endings are followed for forming the different indicative tenses in the second conjugation as in the first.

Note that in the first person singular of the present tense **e** of the stem is retained but shortened before the personal ending **-ō** : **moneō**, *I advise*, *I warn*.

Verbs of the second conjugation end in **-ēre** in the present infinitive.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
monēō	monēre	monuī	monitus

The present stem is **monē-**; the perfect stem, **monu-**; the participial stem, **monit-**.

Present Active Indicative

SINGULAR

1. **mo'neō**, *I advise, am advising, do advise.*
2. **mo'nēs**, *you advise, are advising, do advise.*
3. **mo'net**, *he, she, or it advises, is advising, does advise.*

PLURAL

1. **monē'mus**, *we advise, are advising, do advise.*
2. **monē'tis**, *you advise, are advising, do advise.*
3. **mo'nent**, *they advise, are advising, do advise.*

Imperfect Active Indicative

SINGULAR

1. **monē'bam**, *I was advising, advised, did advise.*
2. **monē'bās**, *you were advising, etc.*
3. **monē'bat**, *he, she, or it was advising, etc.*

PLURAL

1. **monēbā'mus**, *we were advising, advised, did advise*
2. **monēbā'tis**, *you were advising, etc.*
3. **monē'bant**, *they were advising, etc.*

Future Active Indicative

SINGULAR

1. **monē'bō**, *I shall advise.*
2. **monē'bis**, *you will advise.*
3. **monē'bit**, *he, she, or it will advise.*

PLURAL

1. *monē'bimus, we shall advise.*
2. *monē'bitis, you will advise.*
3. *monē'bunt, they will advise.*

VOCABULARY

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus, destroy.

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, have, hold ; consider.

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, move. castra movēre, to break up camp.

praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitus, furnish, supply, offer (prae, forth, and habeō, hold).

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, see.

NOTE. — Nearly all regular verbs ending in *-eō* belong to the second conjugation.

Find the stems of each of the above verbs.

Conjugate in the present, imperfect, and future active indicative and give all the English translations of each form :

- | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. <i>Vidēre.</i> | 2. <i>Habēre.</i> | 3. <i>Dēlēre.</i> |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|

LESSON VIII

EXERCISE

Translate, giving the person and number of each verb :

1. *Patriam cāram nōn vidēbimus. .*
2. *Castra movet.*
3. *Amīcōs bonōs habētis.*
4. *Frūmentum mātūrum et aquam pūram praebeō.*

5. Aedificium dēlēbant.
6. Mārcum vidēbitis.
7. Cūr puerōs monēbās?
8. Virī frūmentum pūblicum dēlēbunt.
9. Quis pecūniam praebēbit?
10. Mōnstrum māgnū vident.

Translate into Latin :

1. We often warn (our) small friends.
2. The farmers will furnish food to the sailors.
3. You [*pl.*] will consider.
4. She will see the girl.
5. You [*sing.*] were destroying the camp.
6. I see the danger.
7. They were breaking up camp.
8. He has a number of weapons.
9. We were building a wall.
10. The free man will give many arms.

LESSON IX

CAROLUS ET PŌMA

Carolus, agricolae filius, puer bonus erat sed amīcōs malōs amāvit. Agricola igitur puerō calathum pōmōrum plēnum dedit. Bona erant multa pōma sed pauca erant mala. Puer dōnum diligenter cūrat, sed pōma mala maculant bona, et mox mala erant cūcta. Tum agricola filium ita monuit: "Pōma mala maculant bona, certē malī amīci maculābunt puerum bonum."

VOCABULARY

calathus, -ī, m., *basket*.pōmum, -ī, n., *apple*.plēnus, -a, -um, *full, filled*.

(Followed by the genitive case.)

maculō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *spoil, spot*. igitur, *therefore*.certē, *surely*.ita, *therefore, so, thus*.diligenter, *carefully*.tum, *then*.

LESSON X

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aedificium, aedifici, n.

filius, fili, m.

gladius, gladi, m.

liber, libri, m.

magister, magistri, m.

nūntius, nūnti, m.

pecūnia, -ae, f.

pirāta, -ae, m.

poēta, -ae, m.

praesidium, praesidi, n.

proelium, proeli, n.

puer, pueri, m.

signifer, signiferi, m.

Vergilius, Vergili, m.

vir, viri, m.

asper, aspera, asperum.

liber, libera, liberum.

miser, misera, miserum.

niger, nigra, nigrum.

piger, pigra, pigrum.

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.

arō, arāre.

dēleō, dēlēre.

dō, dare.

habeō, habēre.

moneō, monēre.

moveō, movēre.

praebeō, praebēre.

videō, vidēre.

semper.

What Latin words are suggested by the following English words?



MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO



GNÆUS POMPEIUS MAGNUS



JULIUS CAESAR



AUGUSTUS

library	puerile	admonish
liberty	equine	oculist
mural	dative	nautical
peril	pecuniary	visualize
filial	gladiator	laborious
movement	miserable	evident

Give other English derivatives from the Latin words suggested.

LESSON XI

SECOND CONJUGATION. PERFECT TENSES

The perfect tenses of second conjugation verbs are formed from the third principal part like the perfect tenses of first conjugation verbs.

Perfect Indicative Active

SINGULAR

1. **mo'nui**, *I advised, have advised, did advise.*
2. **monuis'ti**, *you advised, have advised, did advise.*
3. **mo'nuit**, *he, she, or it advised, has advised, did advise.*

PLURAL

1. **monu'imus**, *we advised, have advised, did advise.*
2. **monuis'tis**, *you advised, have advised, did advise.*
3. **monuē'runt** or **monuē're**, *they advised, have advised, did advise.*

Pluperfect Indicative Active

SINGULAR

1. **monu'eram**, *I had advised.*
2. **monu'erās**, *you had advised.*
3. **monu'erat**, *he, she, or it had advised.*

PLURAL

1. monuerā'mus, *we had advised.*
2. monuerā'tis, *you had advised.*
3. monu'erant, *they had advised.*

Future Perfect Indicative Active

SINGULAR

1. monu'erō, *I shall have advised.*
2. monu'eris, *you will have advised.*
3. monu'erit, *he, she, or it will have advised.*

PLURAL

1. monue'rimus, *we shall have advised.*
2. monue'ritis, *you will have advised.*
3. monu'erint, *they will have advised.*

VOCABULARY

compleō, complēre, complēvi, complētus, *fill up.*

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitus, *owe, ought.*

maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsūrus, *remain.*

teneō, tenēre, tenui, *hold, keep.*

timeō, timēre, timui, *fear, be afraid of.*

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. Timuerint. | 6. Dēlēverāmus. |
| 2. Mānsistis. | 7. Mōveritis. |
| 3. Vīdit. | 8. Dēbueram. |
| 4. Tenuerās. | 9. Complēvit. |
| 5. Habuērunt. | 10. Monuerimus. |

Translate into Latin :

1. He will have destroyed.
2. You [*pl.*] have feared.
3. I had considered.
4. They have held.
5. You [*sing.*] will have remained.
6. We had owed.
7. She has warned.
8. I shall have moved.
9. You [*pl.*] had remained.
10. We have destroyed.
11. They will remain.
12. We have considered.

LESSON XII

EXERCISE

Translate, giving the person, number, and tense of each verb :

1. Proelium cum barbaris vīdimus.
2. Ventus oppidum dēlēverat.
3. Amīcīs pecūniam dēbuit.
4. Fāmae perīculi oppidum complēverint.
5. Cūr in vicō mānsisti?
6. Quid timuerātis?
7. Mōnstrum in insulā vīderint.
8. Servi malī in agrīs manēbunt.
9. Virī validī perīculum nōn timent.
10. Ōrnāmentum pulchrum tenēbam.

Translate into Latin :

1. I had seen the messenger's danger.
2. We shall have remained in the old town.
3. The men have destroyed the beautiful forest.
4. The boy did not owe (his) friend money.
5. You [*pl.*] feared the teacher's words.
6. Who had seen the lieutenant?
7. The woman will remain in (her) daughter's cottage.
8. Why were you [*sing.*] warning the wicked pirates?
9. We are breaking up camp.
10. The free men will have held the town.

LESSON XIII

THIRD DECLENSION

The third declension has a great variety of nominative endings, and includes nouns of all genders. The ending of the genitive singular of the third declension is *-is*. Nouns of this declension are divided into two general classes, those whose stem ends in a consonant and those whose stem ends in *-i-*. The base is found by dropping the genitive singular ending.

The consonant stems are divided into :

- (1) Labial stems, ending in *p*.
- (2) Lingual stems, ending in *t* or *d*.
- (3) Palatal stems, ending in *c* or *g*.
- (4) Liquid stems, ending in *l*, *m*, *n*, or *r*.
- (5) Sibilant stems, ending in *s*.

Princeps, m., chiefStem or base, **princip-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	princeps	principēs
<i>Gen.</i>	principis	principum
<i>Dat.</i>	principī	principibus
<i>Acc.</i>	principem	principēs
<i>Abl.</i>	principe	principibus

Terminations

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	s	ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	is	um
<i>Dat.</i>	ī	ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	em	ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	e	ibus

Compare the case endings of the accusative singular and plural and of the genitive plural of this declension with those endings of the first and second declension nouns, masculine and feminine.

If the vowel *i* stands before the final consonant of the stem, it is frequently changed to *e* in the nominative, as **princeps**.

EXERCISE

Translate, giving the construction of each noun :

1. Carolus princeps bonus erit.
2. Italia est patria principum clārōrum.
3. Principēs māgnōs amāmus.
4. Lēgātus principī victōriam nūntiāvit.
5. Cum principe amīcō habitāveram.

Translate into Latin :

1. The chiefs of the pirates were wicked.
2. We saw the chief of the island.
3. Why have you [*pl.*] not given the chiefs food?
4. They had remained with the chiefs.
5. The chief's sons are proud.

LESSON XIV

THIRD DECLENSION. LINGUAL STEMS

If the stem ends in **-d** or **-t**, the final consonant is dropped before **-s**.

Eques, m., *horseman, knight*

Stem or base, **equit-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	eques	equitēs
<i>Gen.</i>	equitis	equitum
<i>Dat.</i>	equitī	equitibus
<i>Acc.</i>	equitem	equitēs
<i>Abl.</i>	equite	equitibus

Virtūs, f., *manliness, valor, virtue*

Stem or base, **virtūt-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	virtūs	virtūtēs
<i>Gen.</i>	virtūtis	virtūtum
<i>Dat.</i>	virtūtī	virtūtibus
<i>Acc.</i>	virtūtem	virtūtēs
<i>Abl.</i>	virtūte	virtūtibus

Caput, n., head
 Stem or base, **capit-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	caput	capita
<i>Gen.</i>	capitis	capitum
<i>Dat.</i>	capiti	capitibus
<i>Acc.</i>	caput	capita
<i>Abl.</i>	capite	capitibus

Note that masculine and feminine nouns are declined alike.

Note also that *i* in **equit-** is changed to *e* in the nominative singular.

Note that *i* in **capit-** is changed to *u* in the nominative and accusative singular, and review the peculiarities of neuter nouns.

See *Introduction to Latin*, Part I, Lesson XXXI.

VOCABULARY

aetās, aetātis, f., age, time.

caput, capitis, n., head.

custōs, custōdis, m., guard, keeper.

lapis, lapidis, m., stone.

libertās, libertātis, f., freedom, liberty

mīles, mīlitis, m., soldier.

pēs, pedis, m., foot.

praemium, praemi, n., reward.

salūs, salūtis, f., safety.

**cōfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make firm, establish, strengthen ;
 assert, affirm.**

terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus, frighten, alarm, terrify.

LESSON XV

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Puer parvus pedem lapide vulnerāvit.
2. Altī mūrī oppidī mīlitibus salūtem dant.
3. Equus pulcher caput parvum habet.
4. Multōs mīlitēs in proeliō vīderimus.
5. Aetās amīcitiam saepe cōnfīrmat.
6. Salūs est praemium virtūtis.
7. Servī cibum in oppida ad equitēs portābant.
8. Custōs templī peditibus inimīcus erat.
9. Pēs mīlitis vulnerātus erat.
10. Dominī servīs fidīs libertātem dabunt.

Translate into Latin :

1. Glory is the reward of valor.
2. The soldiers were laying waste the beautiful fields.
3. We had lived with the foot-soldiers.
4. Many guards will have remained in the towns.
5. The valor of the good soldiers has been praised by the chiefs.
6. The monster's head was large.
7. The foot-soldier had wounded the standard-bearer's foot with a spear.
8. Victory is dear to a faithful soldier.
9. The guard frightened the children.
10. The valor of the horsemen is saving the liberty of the town.

LESSON XVI

THIRD DECLENSION. PALATAL STEMS
DURATION, ACCUSATIVE

If the stem ends in **-c** or **-g**, the combination of the final **-c** or **-g** of the stem with **-s** gives **x**.

Rēx, m., *king*. Stem or base, **rēg-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	rēgēs
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	rēgum
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	rēgibus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	rēgēs
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	rēgibus

Iūdex, m., *judge*. Stem or base, **iūdic-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	iūdex	iūdicēs
<i>Gen.</i>	iūdicis	iūdicum
<i>Dat.</i>	iūdicī	iūdicibus
<i>Acc.</i>	iūdicem	iūdicēs
<i>Abl.</i>	iūdice	iūdicibus

Note that **i** in stems like **iūdic-** is changed to **e** in the nominative singular.

RULE

Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

Examples :

Multās hōrās pūgnāvērunt.

They fought **many** hours.

Mūrus multōs pedēs altus est.

The wall is **many** feet high.

Multās hōrās expresses duration of time ; **multōs pedēs**, extent of space.

VOCABULARY

dux, ducis, m., *leader*.

fossa, -ae, f., *ditch*.

lēx, lēgis, f., *law*.

pedes, peditis, m., *foot-soldier*.

contrā, prep. with acc., *against*.

per, prep. with acc., *through*.

Decline :

1. Dux superbus.
2. Mīles liber.
3. Virtūs mīra.
4. Caput māgnū.
5. Pedes piger.

LESSON XVII

EXERCISE

Translate, giving the nominative and genitive singular and the gender of each noun :

1. Mīlitēs in oppidō multās hōrās pūgnāverant.
2. Lēgēs patriae populō grātae erant.
3. Liberī cum iūdice erunt.
4. Fossam multōs pedēs altam vīdī.
5. Lēx ā rēge laudātur.
6. Ferae per agrōs lātōs errābant.
7. Dux mīlitēs culpāvit.
8. Fossa multōs pedēs longa est.

9. *Prīnceps iūdicī dōnum dabit.*
10. *Carolus paucōs annōs rēx erat.*

Translate into Latin :

1. Good judges give good laws to the people.
2. The farmers were plowing the fields many hours.
3. We shall see the king's slaves.
4. The slaves were stirred up by the king.
5. The wall of the town is many feet high.
6. I have lived in Italy a few years.
7. They had wounded the leaders with stones.
8. We give the kings beautiful gifts.
9. The leader will be with his daughter.
10. The valor of the soldiers was praised by the leaders.

LESSON XVIII

THIRD DECLENSION. LIQUID STEMS

Most nouns with stems ending in **-l** or **-r** have their nominative identical with the stem. A long vowel of the stem is shortened before a final **l** or **r** of the nominative. Note that **e** is inserted in the nominative singular of stems like **patr-**.

Nouns with stems ending in **-din** and **-gin** change the **in** to **ō** in the nominative. The nominative **homō** is formed by changing the **-in** of the stem in the same manner.

Nouns with stems ending in **-ōn** form the nominative by dropping **n**.

Nouns in **-men** (gen. **-minis**) are neuter.

Cōsul, m., *consul*. Stem or base, cōsul-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	cōsul	cōsulēs
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulis	cōsulum
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsulī	cōsulibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulem	cōsulēs
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsule	cōsulibus

Victor, m., *victor*. Stem or base, victor-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	victor	victōrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	victōris	victōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	victōrī	victōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	victōrem	victōrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	victōre	victōribus

Pater, m., *father*. Stem or base, patr-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	pater	patrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	patris	patrum
<i>Dat.</i>	patri	patribus
<i>Acc.</i>	patrem	patrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	patre	patribus

Multitūdō, f., *great number, multitude*. Stem or base, multitūdin-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	multitūdō	multitūdinēs
<i>Gen.</i>	multitūdinis	multitūdinum
<i>Dat.</i>	multitūdinī	multitūdinibus
<i>Acc.</i>	multitūdinem	multitūdinēs
<i>Abl.</i>	multitūdine	multitūdinibus

Nātiō, f., race, nation. Stem or base, **nātiōn-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	nātiō	nātiōnēs
<i>Gen.</i>	nātiōnis	nātiōnum
<i>Dat.</i>	nātiōnī	nātiōnibus
<i>Acc.</i>	nātiōnem	nātiōnēs
<i>Abl.</i>	nātiōne	nātiōnibus

Flūmen, n., river. Stem or base, **flūmin-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	flūmen	flūmina
<i>Gen.</i>	flūminis	flūminum
<i>Dat.</i>	flūminī	flūminibus
<i>Acc.</i>	flūmen	flūmina
<i>Abl.</i>	flūmine	flūminibus

VOCABULARY

agmen, agminis, n., army (on the march).

frāter, frātris, m., brother.

homō, hominis, m., human being, man.

imperātor, -ōris, m., commander, general.

legiō, -ōnis, f., legion.

longitūdō, -inis, f., length.

māter, mātris, f., mother.

mercātor, -ōris, m., trader, merchant.

sōl, sōlis, m., sun.

soror, -ōris, f., sister.

tīmor, -ōris, m., fear.

virgō, -inis, f., maiden.

The main division of the Roman army was the **legion**.

Homō means *man* as opposed to lower animals or to the gods; **vir** means *man* as opposed to woman.

LESSON XIX

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Sōlem nōn semper vidēs.
2. Virī ā mercātōribus servātī erant.
3. Frāter cōsulis contrā equitēs pūgnābat.
4. Mātrēs filiābus librōs pulchrōs dedērunt.
5. Ducēs agminis virtūtem mīlitum laudābunt.
6. Soror puerī timōrem māgnū habuerat.
7. Vīta longa hominibus grāta est.
8. Longitūdō flūminum in Ītaliā nōn māgna est.
9. Multae nātiōnēs ā legiōnibus superantur.
10. Praemia multitūdīnī victōrum dabuntur.

Translate into Latin :

1. The traders warn the farmers.
2. The river is many feet deep.
3. Marcus is the son of the commander.
4. The maidens were hastening into the village.
5. Who has blamed the leaders?
6. A mother always praises good children.
7. The girl's fear was great.
8. I see the new moon.
9. The boy is telling (his) father a story.
10. We were faithful to the generals.

LESSON XX

THIRD DECLENSION. SIBILANT STEMS

Many neuter stems in **-er** and **-or** (originally **-s** stems) have **-us** in the nominative.

Tempus, n., *time*. Stem or base, **tempor-** (orig. **tempos-**)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	tempus	tempora
<i>Gen.</i>	temporis	temporum
<i>Dat.</i>	temporī	temporibus
<i>Acc.</i>	tempus	tempora
<i>Abl.</i>	tempore	temporibus

Opus, n., *work, task*. Stem or base, **oper-** (orig. **opos-**)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	opus	opera
<i>Gen.</i>	operis	operum
<i>Dat.</i>	operī	operibus
<i>Acc.</i>	opus	opera
<i>Abl.</i>	opere	operibus

VOCABULARY

aestās, **aestātis**, f., *summer*.
agrī cultūra, -ae, f., *agriculture*.
corpus, **corporis**, n., *body*.
hiems, **hiemis**, f., *winter*.
ōrātiō, **ōrātiōnis**, f., *speech, oration*.
vulnus, **vulneris**, n., *wound*.

Translate into English :

1. Servī vulnera dominī cūrābant.
2. Opera militum laudābimus.
3. Ōrātiō cōsulis longa erat.
4. Hiemēs Ītaliae grātae sunt.
5. Tempus annī idōneum agrī cultūrae est.

Translate into Latin :

1. Time puts cares to flight.
2. Summer is agreeable to many.
3. We did see the soldiers' bodies.
4. The consul was in the province with many soldiers.
5. The task will be small.

LESSON XXI

REVIEW. THIRD DECLENSION. CONSONANT STEMS

Translate, giving the nominative and genitive singular and gender of each noun :

1. Opus bonum puellārum laudant.
2. Principēs ad rēgem properāvērunt.
3. Mārcus est imperātor legiōnum.
4. Capita equōrum videō.
5. Nautae frātrēs vocāverant.
6. Rēx multōs militēs habuit.
7. Victōrēs multās hōrās in oppidō mānsērunt.
8. Frāter imperātōris in bellō vulnerātus est.



A ROMAN AND HIS WIFE

Vatican Museum, Rome

Portrait sculpture from a tombstone

1

1

1

Y

non

tive

T

In

E

C

H

C

b

c

c

d

s

d

v

T

1

2

3

9. Cūr lēgēs bonās timētis?
10. Flūmen lātum et altum est.
11. Quis hominibus miserīs proelium nūntiat?
12. Multitūdō mīlitum incolās oppidī terruit.

LESSON XXII

ABLATIVE OF MANNER

Manner is expressed by the ablative with the preposition **cum**; if, however, the noun is limited by an adjective, **cum** may be omitted.

The ablative of manner answers the question "How?"
 "In what manner?"

Example:

Cum dīligentiā labōrat.

He works **diligently** (*with diligence*).

Cum dīligentiā expresses *manner*.

VOCABULARY

brevitās, brevitātis, f., *shortness, brevity*.

calamitās, calamitātis, f., *misfortune, calamity, disaster*.

celeritās, celeritātis, f., *swiftness, speed*.

dolor, dolōris, m., *grief, sorrow*.

studium, studi, n., *eagerness, zeal, desire*.

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, *teach, show*.

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight against, storm, assail*.

Translate into English:

1. Mīlītēs māgnā cum audāciā pūgnābant.
2. Māgnō studiō oppidum oppugnāvimus.
3. Calamitātem oppidī cum dolōre vīdērunt.

4. Dolor animōs tenēbit.
5. Columbae mīrā cum celeritāte volābant.

Translate into Latin :

1. We had seen the consul's danger with sorrow.
2. You [*pl.*] will have remained in the village many hours.
3. The misfortunes of war teach the brevity of life.
4. We work with great diligence.
5. The messenger boldly reports the battle.

LESSON XXIII

THE ROMANS CONQUER THE GERMANS

Rōmānī bellum cum Germānīs parāvērunt. Ex-agrīs et oppidīs māgnō studiō virī ad arma properāvērunt. Iam (*already*) imperātōrēs cum militibus ex Italiā ad Rhēnum, flūmen Germāniae altum et lātum, properābant, et servī equīs et carrīs cibum et frūmentum ad castra Rōmāna portābant. Rōmānī diū et ācriter pūgnāvērunt et Germānōs superāvērunt, quia multōs virōs et bona arma habuērunt.

VOCABULARY

ācriter, adv., *keenly, sharply, fiercely.*

Germānus, -ī, m., *a German.*

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman.*

Rōmānus, -ī, m., *a Roman.*

LESSON XXIV

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aestās, aestātis, f.	libertas, libertātis, f.
aetās, aetātis, f.	māter, mātis, f.
agmen, agminis, n.	mercātor, -ōris, m.
agrī cultūra, -ae, f.	mīles, mīlitis, m.
brevitās, brevītātis, f.	multitūdō, -inis, f.
calamitās, calamitātis, f.	nātiō, -ōnis, f.
caput, capitis, n.	opus, operis, n.
celeritās, celeritātis, f.	ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, f.
cōsul, cōsulis, m.	pater, patris, m.
corpus, corporis, n.	pedes, peditis, m.
custōs, custōdis, m.	pēs, pedis, m.
dīligentia, -ae, f.	praemium, praemī, n.
dolor, -ōris, m.	prīnceps, prīncipis, m.
dux, ducis, m.	rēx, rēgis, m.
eques, equitis, m.	salūs, salūtis, f.
flūmen, flūminis, n.	sōl, sōlis, m.
frāter, frātris, m.	soror, -ōris, f.
hiems, hiemis, f.	studium, studi, n.
homō, hominis, m.	tempus, temporis, n.
imperātor, -ōris, m.	timor, -ōris, m.
iūdex, iūdicis, m.	victor, -ōris, m.
lapis, lapidis, m.	virgō, virginis, f.
legiō, legiōnis, f.	virtūs, virtūtis, f.
lēx, lēgis, f.	vulnus, vulneris, n.

dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus.

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.

doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus.

compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.

cōfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

habeō, -ēre, habuī, habitus.
 maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus.
 moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitus.
 moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus.
 teneō, -ēre, tenuī, —.
 terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus.
 timeō, -ēre, timuī, —.
 videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus.

cūctus, -a, -um.	certē.	
paucī, -ae, -a.	dīligerter.	tum.
plēnus, -a, -um.	iam.	contrā.
Rōmānus, -a, -um.	igitur.	per.

What Latin words are suggested by the following English words?

regal	natural	plenty
animated	provincial	complete
fraternal	novelty	tenacity
lunar	principal	indebted
military	invulnerable	capital
primary	legal	pedestal

Give other English derivatives from the Latin words suggested.

LESSON XXV

VERBS. SECOND CONJUGATION. PASSIVE VOICE

The rules for forming the present, imperfect, and future indicative in the passive voice are the same as in the active voice, the passive personal endings taking the place of the active ones.

Present Indicative**SINGULAR**

1. *mo'neor, I am advised.*
2. *moně'ris, -re, you are advised.*
3. *moně'tur, he, she, or it is advised.*

PLURAL

1. *moně'mur, we are advised.*
2. *moně'minī, you are advised.*
3. *monen'tur, they are advised.*

Imperfect Indicative**SINGULAR**

1. *moně'bar, I was advised.*
2. *moněbā'ris, -re, you were advised.*
3. *moněbā'tur, he, she, or it was advised.*

PLURAL

1. *moněbā'mur, we were advised.*
2. *moněbā'minī, you were advised.*
3. *moněban'tur, they were advised.*

Future Indicative**SINGULAR**

1. *moně'bor, I shall be advised.*
2. *moně'beris, -re, you will be advised.*
3. *moně'bitur, he, she, or it will be advised.*

PLURAL

1. *moně'bimur, we shall be advised.*
2. *moněbi'minī, you will be advised.*
3. *moněbun'tur, they will be advised.*

EXERCISE

Conjugate in the present, imperfect, and future indicative in the passive voice :

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 1. Dēlĕre. | 4. Movĕre. |
| 2. Vidĕre. | 5. Terrĕre. |
| 3. Vocāre. | |

Translate, giving the tense, voice, person, and number of each verb :

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. Timĕbunt. | 6. Necātur. |
| 2. Vidĕbātur. | 7. Movĕbāminī. |
| 3. Dēlentur. | 8. Videor. |
| 4. Tenētis. | 9. Monēberis. |
| 5. Mānsistī. | 10. Vidĕbāmur. |

Translate into Latin :

1. You [*pl.*] are praised.
2. They will be warned.
3. I was seen.
4. She is seen.
5. It will be destroyed.
6. You [*pl.*] had remained.
7. I did fear.
8. You [*pl.*] will be moved.
9. We were terrified.
10. They are moved.

LESSON XXVI

VOCABULARY

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus (con and teneō), *hold together, restrain, bound, hem in.*

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, — (per and teneō), *reach through, extend, pertain.*

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (per and moveō), *move thoroughly, rouse, influence.*

EXERCISE

Translate, giving the tense, voice, person, and number of each verb :

1. Puerī ā magistrō docentur.
2. Dux ā militibus monēbātur.
3. In insulā vidēbimur.
4. Terrēbiminī.
5. Dē periculīs saepe moneor.
6. Cūr permovēbāris?
7. Aedificium movēbitur.
8. Militēs ab imperātōre culpābuntur.
9. Mūrō continēbimur.
10. Mūrus multōs pedēs pertinet.

Translate into Latin :

1. The sailors will be terrified by the pirates.
2. We are often moved by the words of great men.
3. The soldiers were shut in by deep rivers.
4. You [*sing.*] were warned by friends.
5. I shall be seen in the field.

6. Why are you [*pl.*] not influenced?
7. The girl is taught by (her) brother.
8. Much grain will be moved out of the town.
9. You [*sing.*] will be praised.
10. We were called into the forest.

LESSON XXVII

SECOND CONJUGATION. PERFECT
PASSIVE SYSTEM

The perfect passive system is built on the participial stem. It is made by combining the participial stem, plus the endings seen in **bonus**, **bona**, **bonum**, to agree with the subject, with **sum** for the perfect, **eram** for the pluperfect, and **erō** for the future perfect tense.

Perfect Indicative

SINGULAR

1. **mo'nitus sum**, *I have been advised, was advised.*
2. **mo'nitus es**, *you have been advised, were advised.*
3. **mo'nitus est**, *he has been advised, was advised.*

PLURAL

1. **mo'nitī sumus**, *we have been advised, were advised.*
2. **mo'nitī estis**, *you have been advised, were advised.*
3. **mo'nitī sunt**, *they have been advised, were advised.*

Pluperfect Indicative

SINGULAR

1. **mo'nitus eram**, *I had been advised.*
2. **mo'nitus erās**, *you had been advised*
3. **mo'nitus erat**, *he had been advised.*

PLURAL

1. *mo'nitī erā'mus, we had been advised.*
2. *mo'nitī erā'tis, you had been advised.*
3. *mo'nitī erant, they had been advised.*

Future Perfect Indicative

SINGULAR

1. *mo'nitus erō, I shall have been advised.*
2. *mo'nitus eris, you will have been advised.*
3. *mo'nitus erit, he will have been advised.*

PLURAL

1. *mo'nitī e'rimus, we shall have been advised.*
2. *mo'nitī e'ritis, you will have been advised.*
3. *mo'nitī erunt, they will have been advised.*

EXERCISE

Conjugate in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative in the passive voice :

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. Vidēre. | 4. Terrēre. |
| 2. Permovēre. | 5. Continēre. |
| 3. Laudāre. | |

Translate, giving the tense, voice, person, and number of each verb :

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Vīsus eram. | 6. Dēlētum erat. |
| 2. Permōtī eritis. | 7. Vīsus es. |
| 3. Territa est. | 8. Contentus erit. |
| 4. Monitae sumus. | 9. Monitī estis. |
| 5. Vīsī erunt. | 10. Dēlēta erant. |

Translate into Latin :

1. We have been seen.
2. You [*sing.*] had been warned.
3. They will have been destroyed.
4. I had been influenced.
5. You [*pl.*] were shut in.
6. She will have been frightened.
7. We shall have been seen.
8. I have been warned.
9. It had been destroyed.
10. They were moved.

LESSON XXVIII

EXERCISE

Translate, giving the tense, voice, person, and number of each verb :

1. Fēminae audāciā mīlitum territae erant.
2. Oppidum ab equitibus dēlētum erit.
3. Ā duce vīsī erāmus.
4. Sīgna mōta erunt.
5. Verbīs amīcōrum monitī estis.
6. Servus ā dominō saepe monitus erat.
7. Dōna data sunt.
8. Soror imperātōris permōta est.
9. Doctus erō.
10. Ā māt্রে culpātus erās.

Translate into Latin :

1. The leader had been warned.
2. Many towns will have been destroyed by the wicked general.
3. The legion had been moved with great swiftness.
4. Grain has been furnished by the good farmers.
5. I shall not have been influenced.
6. You [*pl.*] have always been praised.
7. She has been well taught.
8. The large monster has been killed.
9. We had been taught by (our) father.
10. Why will you [*sing.*] not have been seen?

LESSON XXIX

THIRD DECLENSION. STEMS IN -i

Nouns with -i stems are :

1. Masculines and feminines :

a. Nouns in -ēs and -is having the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative :
hostis, hostis, is an -i stem, but *lapis, lapidis*, is a consonant stem.

b. Nouns in -ns and -rs : *cohors*.

c. Nouns of one syllable in -s or -x following a consonant : *mōns, urbs, arx*.

2. Neuter nouns in -e, -al, and -ar : *mare, animal*.

The declension of i-stems is nearly the same as that of consonant stems. The following are the principal differences :

1. Masculine and feminine nouns have **-ium** in the genitive plural and **-is** or **-ēs** in the accusative plural.
 - a. **avis, cīvis, classis, finis, ignis, nāvis** have the ablative singular in **-ī** or **-e**.
 - b. **turris** has the accusative **turrim** or **turrem** and the ablative **turri** or **turre**.
2. Neuter nouns have **-ī** in the ablative singular, and **-i** in every form of the plural.

Hostis, m., enemy. Stem, **hostī-**. Base, **host-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	hostis	hostēs
<i>Gen.</i>	hostis	hostium
<i>Dat.</i>	hostī	hostibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hostem	hostīs, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	hoste	hostibus

Nūbēs, f., cloud. Stem, **nūbī-**. Base, **nūb-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	nūbēs	nūbēs
<i>Gen.</i>	nūbis	nūbium
<i>Dat.</i>	nūbī	nūbibus
<i>Acc.</i>	nūbem	nūbīs, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	nūbe	nūbibus

Ignis, m., fire. Stem, **igni-**. Base, **ign-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	ignis	ignēs
<i>Gen.</i>	ignis	ignium
<i>Dat.</i>	igni	ignibus
<i>Acc.</i>	ignem	ignīs, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	igni or -e	ignibus

Terminations. — Masculine and Feminine

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	-is, -ēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	-is	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	-ī	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	-em (-im)	-is, ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	-e (-ī)	-ibus

VOCABULARY

avis, avis, -ium, f., *bird*.

caedēs, caedis, -ium, f., *slaughter*.

cīvis, cīvis, -ium, m. or f., *citizen*.

classis, classis, -ium, f., *fleet*.

collis, collis, -ium, m., *hill*.

finis, finis, -ium, m., *end, border* ; pl., *territory, boundaries*.

hostis, hostis, -ium, m., *enemy* ; pl., *the enemy*.

mēnsis, mēnsis, -ium, m., *month*.

nāvis, nāvis, -ium, f., *ship*.

rūpēs, rūpis, -ium, f., *cliff*.

turris, turris, -ium, f., *tower*.

vallēs, vallis, -ium, f., *valley*.

hostis, general word for *enemy* ; a *public enemy*.

inimicus, a *private* or *personal enemy* ; opposite of
amicus.

EXERCISE

Decline :

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. Avis parva. | 4. Nūbēs nigra. |
| 2. Classis māgna. | 5. Hostis malus. |
| 3. Mēnsis pulcher. | |

LESSON XXX

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Dux hostīs monuit.
2. Multōs mēnsīs in Ītaliā cum amīcīs mānsī.
3. Caedēs cīvium māgna erat.
4. Rōmānī finīs lātōs habēbunt.
5. Nūbēs nigrae ā nautīs vīsae erant.
6. Rūpīs māgnās in Ītaliā vīdimus.
7. Est turris pulchra in colle.
8. Multae nāvēs classis māgnae dēlētae sunt.
9. Ignem in valle vidēbitis.
10. Avēs per vallēs volābant.

Translate into Latin :

1. Fire destroyed the forests of the island.
2. The enemy had held the hill many hours.
3. We were furnishing food to the citizens.
4. Why do you build a tower on an island?
5. The leader of the fleet will have praised the good sailors.
6. The slaughter of the enemy was seen by many citizens.
7. Birds often live on high cliffs.
8. The grief of the citizen was great.
9. Clouds filled the valley.
10. The lady's son will remain in the town many months.

LESSON XXXI

THIRD DECLENSION. STEMS IN -I (Continued)

Clīens, m., *retainer, client*. Stem, *clienti-*. Base, *client-*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	clīens	clientēs
<i>Gen.</i>	clientis	clientium
<i>Dat.</i>	clientī	clientibus
<i>Acc.</i>	clientem	clientīs, -es
<i>Abl.</i>	cliente	clientibus

Urbs, f., *city*. Stem, *urbi-*. Base, *urb-*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	urbs	urbēs
<i>Gen.</i>	urbis	urbium
<i>Dat.</i>	urbī	urbibus
<i>Acc.</i>	urbem	urbīs, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	urbe	urbibus

VOCABULARY

arx, arcis, -ium, f., *citadel*.

cohors, cohortis, -ium, f., *cohort* (a tenth of a legion).

mēns, mentis, -ium, f., *mind*.

mōns, montis, -ium, m., *mountain*.

nox, noctis, -ium, f., *night*.

pars, partis, -ium, f., *part*.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Dux arcem militibus complēvit.
2. Multōs clientīs habēbit.

3. Partem montis tenēbāmus.
4. Quis erat dux cohortium?
5. Mēns timida proelium timet.

Translate into Latin :

1. The night was beautiful.
2. They were holding the city with great valor.
3. You [*sing.*] have seen the citadel.
4. We remained in the mountains many months.
5. There were many cities in the territory of the enemy.

LESSON XXXII

THIRD DECLENSION. STEMS IN *-I* (Continued)

Neuters

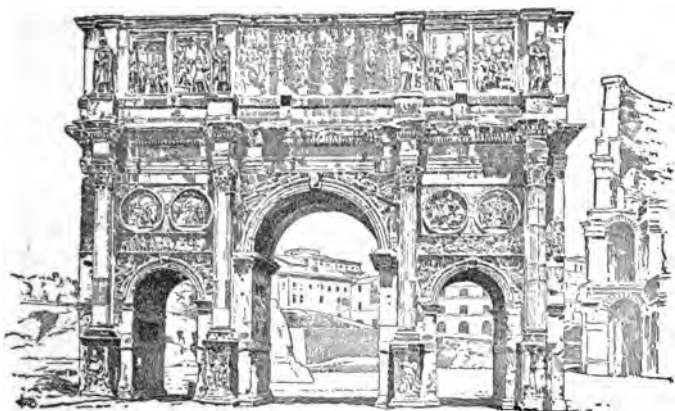
Mare, n., sea. Stem, **mari-**. Base, **mar-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	mare	maria
<i>Gen.</i>	maris	(marium) ¹
<i>Dat.</i>	marī	maribus
<i>Acc.</i>	mare	maria
<i>Abl.</i>	marī	maribus

Animal, n., animal. Stem, **animāli-**. Base, **animal-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	animal	animālia
<i>Gen.</i>	animālis	animālium
<i>Dat.</i>	animālī	animālibus
<i>Acc.</i>	animal	animālia
<i>Abl.</i>	animālī	animālibus

¹ The genitive plural of **mare** is not used.



ARCH OF CONSTANTINE
Erected at Rome in 315 A.D.



THE WALL OF ROME

The material is concrete faced with brick; thickness, 13 feet; greatest height, 58 feet. This is still the wall of the modern city, although at present no effort is made to keep it in repair.



Terminations. — Neuter

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	-e or —	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	-is	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	-i	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	-e or —	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	-i	-ibus

VOCABULARY

calcar, calcāris, -ium, n., spur.

insigne, insignis, -ium, n., decoration, badge.

pōns, pontis, -ium, m., bridge.

rīpa, -ae, f., bank (of a river).

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Agricola animālibus partem frūmentī dederat.
2. Rīpae flūminis altae erant.
3. Sunt multa animālia in marī.
4. Calcāria equitis equum vulnerāvērunt.
5. Puer insigne militis habet.

Translate into Latin :

1. The men are building a long bridge.
2. The soldiers' badges were new.
3. Many animals had been seen on the mountain.
4. They will live on the bank of the river.
5. The leader of the enemy was a good soldier.

LESSON XXXIII

THIRD DECLENSION. GENDER. IRREGULAR
NOUNS

As we have seen, the gender of nouns of the third declension cannot be determined by the nominative singular, as in the first and second declensions. It must be learned with the word. In general nouns whose nominative singular ends in **-or**, **-ōs**, **-er**, and **-es** (gen. **-itis**) are masculine. Nouns in **-ō**, **-is**, **-ēs**, **-x**, **-s** preceded by a consonant or by any long vowel but **ō**, and abstract nouns in **-dō**, **-iō**, **-tās**, **-tūs**, are generally feminine. Nouns in **-al**, **-ar**, **-e**, **-men**, **-us** (gen. **-eris**, **-oris**), and **caput** are neuter. Exceptions to these rules are to be learned from the vocabularies.

Vis, f., *force*. Stems, **vī-**, **vīri-**
Vīrēs, **vīrium**, f. pl., *forces*, *strength*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	vīs	vīrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	vīs ¹	vīrium
<i>Dat.</i>	vī ¹	vīribus
<i>Acc.</i>	vīm	vīrīs, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	vī	vīribus

Iter, n., *march*, *journey*. Stems, **iter-**, **itiner-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	iter	itinerā
<i>Gen.</i>	itineris	itinerum
<i>Dat.</i>	itinerī	itineribus
<i>Acc.</i>	iter	itinerā
<i>Abl.</i>	itinere	itineribus

¹ These forms are rare.

EXERCISE

Give the gender of the following nouns and the rule by which it is determined :

nātiō	opus	flūmen
tempus	libertās	arx
timor	mīles	multitūdō
animal	salūs	caedēs
urbs	pater	īnsigne

Review third declension nouns.

LESSON XXXIV

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.
STEMS IN -I

Nearly all adjectives of the third declension have i-stems and they are declined almost like nouns with i-stems.

Adjectives of the third declension in -er have *three* different endings in the nominative singular.

Ācer, ācris, ācre, keen, sharp, active. Stem, ācri-

Base, ācr-

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

PLURAL			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

Adjectives in *-is* have two different endings in the nominative singular, the masculine and feminine being alike.

Fortis, forte, brave. Stem, *forti-*. Base, *fort-*

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	fortis	forte	fortēs
<i>Gen.</i>	fortis	fortis	fortium
<i>Dat.</i>	forti	forti	fortibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortem	forte	fortīs, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	forti	forti	fortibus

Adjectives of the third declension not ending in *-er* or *-is* have one ending in the nominative singular.

Audāx, bold, daring. Stem, *audāci-*. Base, *audāc-*

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	audāx	audāx	audācēs
<i>Gen.</i>	audācis	audācis	audācium
<i>Dat.</i>	audāci	audāci	audācibus
<i>Acc.</i>	audācem	audāx	audācīs, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	audāci (-e)	audāci (-e)	audācibus

Vetus, *old*, is a consonant stem and is declined as follows :

SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
<i>Gen.</i>	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
<i>Dat.</i>	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
<i>Acc.</i>	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
<i>Abl.</i>	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

VOCABULARY

brevis, *breve*, *short*.
celer, *celeris*, *celere*, *swift*.
gravis, *grave*, *heavy*, *severe*.
inūtilis, *inūtile*, *useless*.
levis, *leve*, *light* (in weight).
omnis, *omne*, *all*, *every*.
potēns, *potentis*, *powerful*.
ūtilis, *ūtile*, *useful*.

Decline :

1. Mīles ācer.
2. Animal ācre.
3. Vir fortis.
4. Tempus breve.
5. Fēmina audāx.

LESSON XXXV

EXERCISE

Translate, giving especial attention to adjectives

1. Potentem et clārum cīvem laudāmus
2. Nautās audācēs vīdī.
3. Equus animal ūtile est.

4. Locus castrīs [*dat.*] inūtilis erit.
5. Puer feram sagittā celerī vulnerāvit.
6. Milītēs ācrēs in proelium properant.
7. Iter breve erat.
8. Virēs puerōrum māgnae nōn sunt.
9. Imperātōrēs mīlitibus veteribus praemia dant.
10. Vulnus grave habuistī.

Translate into Latin :

1. He will have fought with a light sword.
2. The general had given the brave soldiers rewards.
3. Many animals are useful.
4. The horse has been wounded by the horse-man's sharp spurs.
5. A daring general is often killed.
6. We shall destroy all the ships.
7. The boy has a swift horse.
8. The enemy will storm all the villages.
9. Powerful kings always have brave friends.
10. We had often seen the monster in the dense forest.

LESSON XXXVI

A ROMAN INVASION

Ōlim peditēs Rōmānī cum equitibus celeribus ad urbem hostium properābant. Mox agricolam in itinere vulnerāvērunt, quī ¹ eīs ² viam brevem dēmōnstrāvit. Iam Rōmānī moenia et turrīs validās

¹ quī, *who*.

² eīs, *to them*.

urbis vidēbant. In moenibus erant multī prīncipēs quī Rōmānōs vidērunt. Mīlitēs et omnēs cīvēs ad arma properāvērunt ubi ¹ sīgnum ab imperātōre ācrī datum est. Grave et ācre erat proelium, et Rōmānī hostīs fortīs superāvērunt. Apud captīvōs erant māter et soror rēgis. Paucī Rōmānī ab hostibus vulnerātī sunt. Proelium Rōmānīs erat grātum.

VOCABULARY

captīvus, -ī, m., *captive*.

moenia, -ium, n. pl., *walls, ramparts*.

mox, adv., *soon, presently*.

apud, prep. with acc., *among, at*.

LESSON XXXVII

VOCABULARY REVIEW

Give the genitive singular, gender, and meaning of the following nouns :

animal	cohors	mēnsis
arx	collis	moenia
avis	fīnis	mōns
caedēs	hostis	nāvis
calcar	ignis	nox
captīvus	insigne	nūbēs
cīvis	iter	pars
classis	mare	pōns
cliēns	mēns	rīpa

¹ ubi, *when*.

rūpēs
turris

urbs
vallēs

vīs

Give the nominative singular forms and the meaning of the following adjectives :

ācer

fortis

omnis

audāx

gravis

potēns

brevis

inūtilis

ūtilis

celer

levis

vetus

Give the principal parts and meaning of the following verbs :

contineō

permovēō

pertineō

Give the part of speech and meaning of :

ācriter

apud

mox

Give English derivatives from the following Latin words :

avis

finis

omnis

audāx

gravis

pars

brevis

ignis

potēns

celer

mare

urbs

cīvis

mēns

ūtilis

What Latin words are suggested by the following English words ?

fortitude

duke

hostile

maternal

veteran

violence

virtue

corporal

levity

pedestrian

turret

nocturnal

temporary

naval

client

LESSON XXXVIII

VERBS. THIRD CONJUGATION. ACTIVE

Dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, lead

The present active infinitive of the third conjugation ends in **-ere**. The present stem ending **-e** is changed in most forms of the present indicative to **-i** or **-u**.

Present Indicative Active**SINGULAR**

1. **dū'cō**, *I lead, am leading, do lead.*
2. **dū'cis**, *you lead, are leading, do lead.*
3. **dū'cit**, *he, she, or it leads, is leading, does lead.*

PLURAL

1. **dū'cimus**, *we lead, are leading, do lead.*
2. **dū'citis**, *you lead, are leading, do lead.*
3. **dū'cunt**, *they lead, are leading, do lead.*

In the imperfect tense the final **-e** of the stem is lengthened before the tense sign **-bā-**. This makes the imperfect of the third conjugation just like the imperfect of the second.

Imperfect Indicative Active**SINGULAR**

1. **dūcē'bam**, *I was leading, led, did lead.*
2. **dūcē'bās**, *you were leading, etc.*
3. **dūcē'bat**, *he, she, or it was leading, etc.*

PLURAL

1. **dūcēbā'mus**, *we were leading, led, did lead.*
2. **dūcēbā'tis**, *you were leading, etc.*
3. **dūcē'bant**, *they were leading, etc.*

The tense sign of the future tense is *-ē*, except in the first person singular, where it appears as *-a-*. The final *-e-* of the stem is dropped before this tense sign.

Future Indicative Active

SINGULAR

1. *dū'cam*, *I shall lead.*
2. *dū'cēs*, *you will lead.*
3. *dū'cet*, *he, she, or it will lead.*

PLURAL

1. *dūcē'mus*, *we shall lead.*
2. *dūcē'tis*, *you will lead.*
3. *dū'cent*, *they will lead.*

VOCABULARY

ēducō, ēducere, ēdūxī, ēductus (*ē* and *dūcō*), *lead out.*

redūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductus (*re* and *dūcō*), *lead back, withdraw.*

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *send.*

remittō, remittere, remīsī, remissus (*re* and *mittō*), *send back.*

āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī, āmissus (*ā* and *mittō*), *send away, lose.*

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write.*

cōnscrībō, cōnscrībere, cōnscrīpsī, cōnscrīptus (*cōn* and *scrībō*), *enroll, enlist, levy.*

EXERCISE

Conjugate in the present, imperfect, and future indicative in the active voice :

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------|------------|
| 1. Mittere. | 2. Scrībere. | 3. Habēre. |
| 4. Parāre. | 5. Ēducere. | |

Analyze ¹ and translate :

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. Remittunt. | 6. Dūcam. |
| 2. Mittētis. | 7. Redūcent. |
| 3. Ēdūcēbat. | 8. Mittēbāmus. |
| 4. Redūcimus. | 9. Scribō. |
| 5. Āmittis. | 10. Ēdūcēbātis. |

Translate into Latin :

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. He will lead out. | 6. You [<i>pl.</i>] will lead. |
| 2. They are leading. | 7. I was leading back. |
| 3. You [<i>sing.</i>] send. | 8. You [<i>pl.</i>] send away. |
| 4. We were sending back. | 9. We shall write. |
| 5. I shall send away. | 10. He was enlisting. |

LESSON XXXIX

EXERCISE

Translate, analyzing each verb form :

1. Nauta nāvēs remittit.
2. Līberōs dūcēbāmus.
3. Multī puerī cōscribent.
4. Cūr scribitis?
5. Quem redūcēbās?
6. Pecūniam āmittō.
7. Lēgātus cōpiās ad proelium dūcit.
8. Cīvis fidus ad urbem nūntium mittet.
9. Ex oppidīs equitēs ēdūcēbātis.
10. Multa oppida dēlēbimus.

¹ In analyzing a verb form, give its conjugation, tense, voice, person, and number.

Translate into Latin :

1. Who was leading the troops?
2. The men are withdrawing from the towns to the forests.
3. We shall send the soldiers with great speed.
4. The boys will lead the horses to the river.
5. Why were you [*sing.*] sending the children back?
6. I am sending the food away.
7. Who will not enlist?
8. We were writing about the war.
9. Whom are you [*pl.*] calling?
10. I shall lead the man back.

LESSON XL

THIRD CONJUGATION. PERFECT SYSTEM ACTIVE

The perfect stem of *dūcō* is *dūx-*.

Perfect Indicative Active

SINGULAR

1. *dū'xī*, *I led, have led, did lead.*
2. *dūxis'tī*, *you led, have led, did lead.*
3. *dū'xit*, *he, she, or it led, has led, did lead.*

PLURAL

1. *dū'ximus*, *we led, have led, did lead.*
2. *dūxis'tis*, *you led, have led, did lead.*
3. *dūxē'runt* or *dūxē're*, *they led, have led, did lead.*

Pluperfect Indicative Active**SINGULAR**

1. *dū'xeram, I had led.*
2. *dū'xerās, you had led.*
3. *dū'xerat, he, she, or it had led.*

PLURAL

1. *dūxerā'mus, we had led.*
2. *dūxerā'tis, you had led.*
3. *dū'xerant, they had led.*

Future Perfect Indicative Active**SINGULAR**

1. *dū'xerō, I shall have led.*
2. *dū'xeris, you will have led.*
3. *dū'xerit, he, she, or it will have led.*

PLURAL

1. *dūx'erimus, we shall have led.*
2. *dūx'eritis, you will have led.*
3. *dū'xerint, they will have led.*

VOCABULARY

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, drive ; do, perform.

vincō, vincere, vici, victus, conquer.

vivō, vivere, vixi, victus, live.

auxilium, auxili, n., aid, help ; pl., auxiliary forces, troops.

epistula, -ae, f., letter, epistle.

EXERCISE

Conjugate in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative active :

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1. Vincere. | 4. Dare. |
| 2. Mittere. | 5. Agere. |
| 3. Timēre. | |

Translate, analyzing each verb form :

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. \bar{E} gistī. | 6. Vicī. |
| 2. Vīxerant. | 7. Cōnscrīpserō. |
| 3. Mīserimus. | 8. Scrīpserit. |
| 4. Redūxit. | 9. \bar{A} mīserāmus. |
| 5. \bar{E} dūxerātis. | 10. \bar{E} geritis. |

Translate into Latin :

1. They will have conquered.
2. I had lived.
3. You [*pl.*] have driven.
4. You [*sing.*] did send.
5. We had led back.
6. He will have written.
7. They have enlisted.
8. I shall have lived.
9. You [*sing.*] had led out.
10. He drove.

LESSON XLI

EXERCISE

Translate, analyzing the verb forms :

1. Multās epistulās scrīpserimus.
2. Lēgātōs ad imperātōrem hostium mīserunt.
3. Multōs annōs vīxistī.
4. Auxilia ad imperātōrem fortem mīserāmus.

5. *Equōs celerīs in vallem pulchram ēgeram.*
6. *Germānōs audācīs vīcerimus.*
7. *Imperātor ācer auxilia trāns flūmen dūxerit.*
8. *Cūr nōn cōscripsistis?*
9. *Vulnus grave habuī.*
10. *Gladiīs levibus pūgnāverant.*

Translate into Latin :

1. He had conquered the forces of the enemy.
2. We shall have lived in the city many months.
3. I have driven the animals to the bank of the river.
4. She has written a book concerning the shortness of life.
5. You [*sing.*] will have led the troops out of the village.
6. They had seen the fleet on the sea.
7. We saw the foot-soldier's body on the bridge.
8. The enemy had a powerful general.
9. You [*pl.*] have fought with all the leaders.
10. The people will have feared the new king.

LESSON XLII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Comparative with *quam* or with the Ablative

The comparative of an adjective is formed from the base of the positive by adding *-ior*, masculine and feminine, and *-ius*, neuter; the superlative by adding *-issimus*, *-issima*, *-issimum*.

Cārus, *dear*. Base, **cār-**
Fortis, *brave*. Base, **fort-**

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārus , -a, -um, <i>dear</i>	cārior , cārius , <i>dearer</i>	cārissimus , -a, -um, <i>dearest, very dear</i>
fortis , forte , <i>brave</i>	fortior , fortius , <i>braver</i>	fortissimus , -a, -um, <i>bravest, very brave</i>

In English *more, too, rather, quite, somewhat* are translations of the comparative; *most, very* of the superlative.

The comparative of an adjective is declined like a consonant stem of the third declension.

SINGULAR		
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	cārior	cārius
<i>Gen.</i>	cāriōris	cāriōris
<i>Dat.</i>	cāriōrī	cāriōrī
<i>Acc.</i>	cāriōrem	cārius
<i>Abl.</i>	cāriōre	cāriōre
PLURAL		
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	cāriōrēs	cāriōra
<i>Gen.</i>	cāriōrum	cāriōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cāriōribus	cāriōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	cāriōrēs	cāriōra
<i>Abl.</i>	cāriōribus	cāriōribus

Cārissimus is declined like **māgnus**. Compare **longus**, **brevis**, **audāx**; and decline the comparative of each.

1. The comparative may be followed by **quam**, *than*. **Quam** is used when the first of the words compared is in



POMPEII AS SEEN FROM AN AÉROPLANE

the genitive, dative, or ablative and *may be* used when the first is in the nominative or accusative. If **quam** is used, the two words compared are in the same case.

2. The comparative, if **quam** is omitted, is followed by the ablative.

Examples :

Patria *hominibus cārior quam vīta est.*

Their **native land** is dearer to men than **life**.

Patria hominibus cārior vītā est.

VOCABULARY

aurum, -ī, n., *gold*.

nihil, n. (indeclinable), *nothing*.

fēlix, **fēlicis**, adj., *happy, fortunate*.

quam, adv., *than*.

LESSON XLIII

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. **Mārcus** **fēlicior** in **vīcō** **quam** in **urbe** **est**.
2. **Aestās** **grātior** **hieme** **est**.
3. **Flūmen** **longissimum** **vīdimus**.
4. **Iter** **brevius** **erit**.
5. **Peditēs** **fortissimōs** **mittēmus**.
6. **Rōmānī** **fortiōrēs** **Germānīs** **sunt**.
7. **Prīncipēs** **potentissimī** **trāns** **flūmen** **equōs** **dūxērunt**.
8. **Rēgēs** **semper** **cīvibus** **potentiōrēs** **sunt**.
9. **Pilum** **longius** **quam** **gladius** **est**.
10. **Mēns** **hominum** **est** **celerior** **quam** **corpus**.

Translate into Latin :

1. Seas are deeper than rivers.
2. You [*pl.*] fear very bold men.
3. We have seen very high mountains.
4. Nothing is dearer than life.
5. The bravest general was killed.
6. There were very heavy weapons on the bridge.
7. What is more useful than money?
8. Life is dearer to men than gold.
9. The consul's oration will be rather long.
10. The punishment of the queen was very severe.

LESSON XLIV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

Dative with Adjectives

Adjectives in **-er** form the comparative regularly ; but the superlative is formed by adding **-rimus**, **-a**, **-um** to the nominative masculine of the positive.

Pulcher, *beautiful*. Base, **pulchr-**
Celer, *swift*. Base, **celer-**

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
pulcher , pulchra pulchrum	pulchrior , -ius	pulcherrimus , -a , -um
celer , celeris , celere	celerior , -ius	celerrimus , -a , -um

Compare :

Liber, **piger**, **miser**, **ācer**.

The following six adjectives in *-lis* form the comparative regularly ; but the superlative is formed by adding *-limus* to the base of the positive :

facilis, facile, easy.

difficilis, -e, hard.

similis, -e, like.

dissimilis, -e, unlike.

gracilis, -e, slender.

humilis, -e, low.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis, -e	facilior, facilius	facillimus, -a, -um

Adjectives which have a vowel before the ending *-us* usually form the comparative and superlative by the use of the adverbs **magis, more**, and **māximē, most** ; **idōneus, -a, -um, magis idōneus, -a, -um, māximē idōneus, -a, -um.**

Adjectives meaning *like, unlike, equal, unequal*, and *near* are followed by the dative case.

Examples :

Gladius pīlō nōn similis est.

A sword is not like a javelin.

Rōmānī hostibus parēs erant.

The Romans were equal to the enemy.

VOCABULARY

explōrātor, -ōris, m., scout.

lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language.

ōrātor, -ōris, m., orator.

pāx, pācis, f., peace.

Latīnus, -a, -um, adj., Latin.

pār, paris, adj., equal.

proximus, -a, -um, adj., nearest, next.

LESSON XLV

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Classis hostium cīvīs miserrimōs terrēbat.
2. Iter per montīs in Ītaliā difficillimū est
3. Collēs montibus humiliōrēs sunt.
4. Explōrātor patrī dissimilis est.
5. Viae in vallibus faciliōrēs erunt.
6. Mare magis idōneum classibus quam flūmen est.
7. Nihil bonīs amīcīs pār est.
8. Turrim proximam marī vīdit.
9. Mīlitibus bellum pāce grātius erat.
10. Fīlius pigrior patre erit.

Translate into Latin :

1. The orator's daughter is very slender.
2. The Latin tongue is quite difficult.
3. You [pl.] have the most active soldiers.
4. The Romans are very unlike the Germans.
5. The farmer had lived in the forest next to the sea.
6. He roused the courage of the soldiers.
7. A journey through the valley will be the easiest.
8. The master was more wretched than the slave.
9. I had seen a place very suitable for a camp.
10. They gave the more beautiful lady roses.

LESSON XLVI

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Ablative of Measure of Difference

The following adjectives are compared irregularly :

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius, <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um, <i>best</i>
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, -a, -um, <i>worst</i>
magnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i>	māior, māius, <i>greater</i>	māximus, -a, -um, <i>greatest</i>
multus, -a, -um, <i>much; pl., many</i>	—, plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimus, -a, -um, <i>most</i>
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus, <i>smaller</i>	minimus, -a, -um, <i>smallest</i>

The positive forms of the following are rarely used :

exterus, -a, -um, <i>outside or out- ward</i>	exterior, exterius, <i>outer</i>	{ extrēmus, -a, -um, extimus, -a, -um, <i>outermost, last</i>
inferus, -a, -um, <i>below or low</i>	inferior, inferius, <i>lower</i>	{ infimus, -a, -um, īmus, -a, -um, <i>lowest</i>
posterus, -a, -um, <i>following or next</i>	posterior, posterius, <i>later</i>	{ postrēmus, -a, -um, postumus, -a, -um, <i>last</i>
superus, -a, -um, <i>above</i>	superior, superius, <i>higher</i>	{ suprēmus, -a, -um, summus, -a, -um, <i>highest</i>

Plūs, *more* (pl., *more*, *several*), is declined as follows :

SINGULAR			PLURAL	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	—	plūs	plūris, -ēs	plūra
<i>Abl.</i>	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

In the singular **plūs** is used only as a neuter substantive (noun).

Decline in all genders :

Māior, **pessimus**, **minor**, **melior**, **summus**

The ablative is used with comparatives to express measure or degree of difference. This is called the *Ablative of Degree of Difference*.

Examples :

Puer est altior capite quam soror.

The boy is a head taller (taller **by a head**) than his sister.

Iter bonum est multō brevius.

The good route is **much** shorter (shorter **by much**).

The following neuter ablatives are commonly used to denote measure of difference :

multō, *by much*.

nihilō, *by nothing*.

paulō, *by a little*.

LESSON XLVII

EXERCISE

Translate, comparing the adjectives :

1. Oppidum urbe minus est.
2. Librī m̄ximī nōn sunt semper optimī.
3. Plūrimī captīvī ab equitibus necātī sunt.
4. Nihil melius est quam amīcī bonī.
5. Turris multīs pedibus altior est mūrō.
6. Prīma pars librī facilior est.
7. Dē superiōre locō properāverāmus.
8. Viae in montibus multō difficiliōrēs quam in vallibus erunt.
9. Cīvīs pessimōs vidēbitis.
10. Summus mōns¹ ā peditibus vidēbitur.

Translate into Latin :

1. The boy's father is very good.
2. I shall have better help.
3. The master was much worse than the slave.
4. The smallest animals are often the boldest.
5. Nothing is better than virtue.
6. The sun is much larger than the earth.
7. Very many soldiers remained in the citadel.
8. The Germans are no better (better by nothing) than barbarians.
9. Very keen soldiers are loved by the best citizens.
10. We livē on the smaller island.

¹ *summus mōns, summī montis, m., top of the mountain.*

LESSON XLVIII

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **-ē** to the base of the positive of the adjective: **cārus**, *dear* ; **cārē**, *dearly*.

Adverbs are usually formed from adjectives of the third declension by adding **-iter** to the base of adjectives of three or of two endings, and **-ter** to the base of those of one ending: **ācer**, *sharp* ; **ācriter**, *sharply* ; **audāx**, *bold* ; **audācter**, *boldly*.

Most other adverbs are case-forms of nouns or adjectives: **multum**, acc., *much* ; and **multō**, abl., *by much*, from **multus** (see Lesson XLVI) ; **facile**, *easily*, acc. from **facilis**.

Comparison of Adverbs

The comparative of the adverb has the same form as the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective: **cārus**, *dear* ; **cārius**, *more dearly*.

The superlative of the adverb is formed by adding **-ē** to the base of the superlative of the adjective: **cārissimus**, *dearest* ; **cārissimē**, *most dearly*.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
pulchrē <i>beautifully</i>	pulchrius <i>more beautifully</i>	pulcherrimē <i>most beautifully</i>
miserē <i>wretchedly</i>	miserius <i>more wretchedly</i>	miserrimē <i>most wretchedly</i>
audācter <i>boldly</i>	audācius <i>more boldly</i>	audācissimē <i>most boldly</i>

ācriter <i>sharply</i>	ācrius <i>more sharply</i>	ācerrimē <i>most sharply</i>
fortiter <i>bravely</i>	fortius <i>more bravely</i>	fortissimē <i>most bravely</i>
facile <i>easily</i>	facilius <i>more easily</i>	facillimē <i>most easily</i>
bene <i>well</i>	melius <i>better</i>	optimē <i>best</i>
pārum <i>too little</i>	minus <i>less</i>	minimē <i>least</i>

Form adverbs from the following adjectives and compare them :

Lātus, amīcus, liber, piger, brevis, celer, gravis, potēns.

When the base of an adjective ends in **-nt** (**potent-**) the **t** before the **-ter** is dropped.

Review the comparison of adjectives.

LESSON XLIX

EXERCISE

Translate, comparing the adjectives and adverbs :

1. Militēs fortissimī audācissimē pūgnant.
2. Locus ab equitibus fortiter occupātus erat.
3. Imperātor ācer mīlitēs fortissimē dūxit.
4. Equitēs Rōmānī hostīs facillimē fugābant.
5. Cēna ā fēminā minus facile quam ā filiā parāta erit.
6. Poētae bonī patriam cārissimē amāvērunt.
7. Castra Rōmāna similiōra oppidō erant.

8. Cōpiae ducis contrā hostīs fortissimōs ācerrimē pūgnābant.

9. Māius oppidum hostium facilius dēlēvimus.

10. Porta urbis māxima erat.

Translate into Latin :

1. We easily saw the sea from the tower.
2. The enemy fought boldly ; the Romans fought more boldly.
3. We shall quickly lead out the best forces.
4. The brave general had fought very fiercely.
5. We conquered the enemy quite easily.
6. We were on the top of the hill.
7. Why were you remaining in the smaller city?
8. Who fights less bravely?
9. You [*sing.*] will have driven the swiftest horses.
10. I have witnessed the flight of the worst enemy.

LESSON L

VERBS. THIRD CONJUGATION. PASSIVE

Present Indicative

SINGULAR

1. dū'cor, *I am led.*
2. dū'ceris, -re, *you are led.*
3. dū'citur, *he, she, or it is led.*

PLURAL

1. dū'cimur, *we are led.*
2. dūci'minī, *you are led.*
3. dūcun'tur, *they are led.*

Note that in the second person singular the final *-e-* of the stem is not changed to *-i-*, as it is in the active voice.

Imperfect Indicative

SINGULAR

1. *dūcē'bar, I was led.*
2. *dūcēbā'ris, -re, you were led.*
3. *dūcēbā'tur, he, she, or it was led.*

PLURAL

1. *dūcēbā'mur, we were led.*
2. *dūcēbā'minī, you were led.*
3. *dūcēban'tur, they were led.*

Future Indicative

SINGULAR

1. *dū'car, I shall be led.*
2. *dūcē'ris, -re, you will be led.*
3. *dūcē'tur, he, she, or it will be led.*

PLURAL

1. *dūcē'mur, we shall be led.*
2. *dūcē'minī, you will be led.*
3. *dūcen'tur, they will be led.*

EXERCISE

Conjugate in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive :

- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| 1. Agō. | 4. Dēleō. |
| 2. Mittō. | 5. Superō. |
| 3. Vincō. | |

Analyze and translate the verb forms :

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. Agentur. | 6. Scribētur. |
| 2. Vincimur. | 7. Amittiminī. |
| 3. Edūcēris. | 8. Redūcar. |
| 4. Mittēbāminī. | 9. Mittēbāmur. |
| 5. Remittitur. | 10. Vincor. |

Translate into Latin :

1. I was sent.
2. They will be led out.
3. We are driven.
4. She is sent back.
5. You [*pl.*] were conquered.
6. You [*sing.*] will be sent.
7. They are driven.
8. I shall be led.
9. We were seen.
10. He will be called.

LESSON LI

EXERCISE

Translate, analyzing the verb forms :

1. Legiō nova in Italiā cōscribētur.
2. Plūra praesidia in oppida mittēbantur.
3. Librī meliōrēs scribuntur.
4. Celeritāte māiōre redūcēmur.
5. Cum equitibus celerrimīs edūcēbāris.
6. Gladiō levissimō vulnerātus est.

7. Auxilium liberis minoribus datum erit.
8. Ad principem mittimini.
9. Urbs maior ab hostibus visa erat.
10. Ex agro ad arma ducar.

Translate into Latin :

1. Scouts are sent into the territory of the enemy.
2. Very many soldiers will soon be enlisted.
3. The troops were led from the province into the town.
4. A very long oration will be written.
5. You [pl.] will be led into the lowest valley.
6. I was led out by the braver general.
7. Who is not conquered?
8. We shall be sent back to the larger camp.
9. A very beautiful gift was given to the braver leader.
10. We are led into a smaller province.

LESSON LII

THIRD CONJUGATION. PASSIVE. PERFECT SYSTEM

The participial stem of *ducō* is *duct-*.

Perfect Indicative

SINGULAR

1. *duc'tus sum*, *I have been led, was led.*
2. *duc'tus es*, *you have been led, were led.*
3. *duc'tus est*, *he has been led, was led.*

PLURAL

1. duc'tī sumus, *we have been led, were led.*
2. duc'tī estis, *you have been led, were led.*
3. duc'tī sunt, *they have been led, were led.*

Pluperfect Indicative

SINGULAR

1. duc'tus eram, *I had been led.*
2. duc'tus erās, *you had been led.*
3. duc'tus erat, *he had been led.*

PLURAL

1. duc'tī erā'mus, *we had been led.*
2. duc'tī erā'tis, *you had been led.*
3. duc'tī erant, *they had been led.*

Future Perfect Indicative

SINGULAR

1. duc'tus erō, *I shall have been led.*
2. duc'tus eris, *you will have been led.*
3. duc'tus erit, *he will have been led.*

PLURAL

1. duc'tī e'rimus, *we shall have been led.*
2. duc'tī e'ritis, *you will have been led.*
3. duc'tī erunt, *they will have been led.*

VOCABULARY

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus (con and agō), *collect, compel.*
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, *defend.*
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *carry, wear, wage.* bellum
gerere, *to wage war.*

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, *govern, rule.*

relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus, *leave, abandon.*

trādō, trādere. trādidī. trāditus (trāns and dō), *surrender, give up.*

EXERCISE

Conjugate in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, active and passive :

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1. Regō. | 4. Mittō. |
| 2. Cōgō. | 5. Vāstō. |
| 3. Moveō. | |

Translate, analyzing the verb forms :

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Coāctī erant. | 6. Trāditā sunt. |
| 2. Dēfēnsae erimus. | 7. Missus eris. |
| 3. Gestum est. | 8. Ēductus eram. |
| 4. Rēctī erāmus. | 9. Missus erat. |
| 5. Relicta est. | 10. Reductī eritis. |

Translate into Latin :

1. We shall have been defended.
2. He had been left.
3. You [*pl.*] will have been sent.
4. I have been led out.
5. They had been collected.
6. It has been waged.
7. You [*sing.*] had been conquered.
8. They will have been surrendered.
9. We have been left.
10. She had been defended.

LESSON LIII

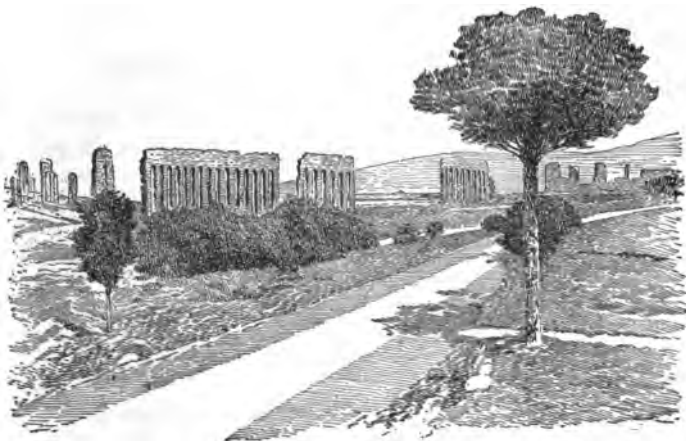
EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Urbēs ā mīlitibus fortissimē dēfēnsae sunt.
2. Castra hostium trādita erant.
3. Iūdex in vicō relictus erat.
4. Mīlitēs meliōrēs nōn victī erunt.
5. Bellum gravissimum gestum est.
6. Arma optima trādiderāmus.
7. Multī librī dē bellō scrīptī sunt.
8. Ex agrīs in oppida ēductī erimus.
9. Cūr ad templum missī estis?
10. In lūdō relictus erō.

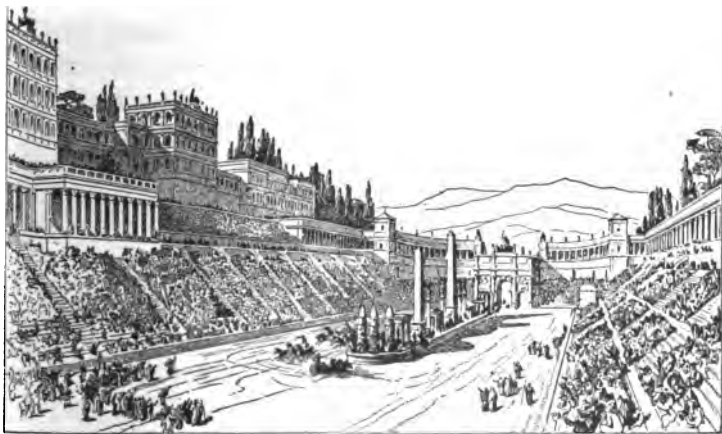
Translate into Latin :

1. Many very wicked wars have been waged.
2. The bravest general has been left in danger.
3. The most daring men will have been collected.
4. We had been led to the walls of the city.
5. You [*sing.*] will have been very well defended.
6. The town had been surrendered to the soldiers.
7. I have been sent into the greatest danger.
8. The weapons of the soldiers will have been left in the camp.
9. You [*pl.*] had been well ruled.
10. A rather short oration will have been written by the boy.

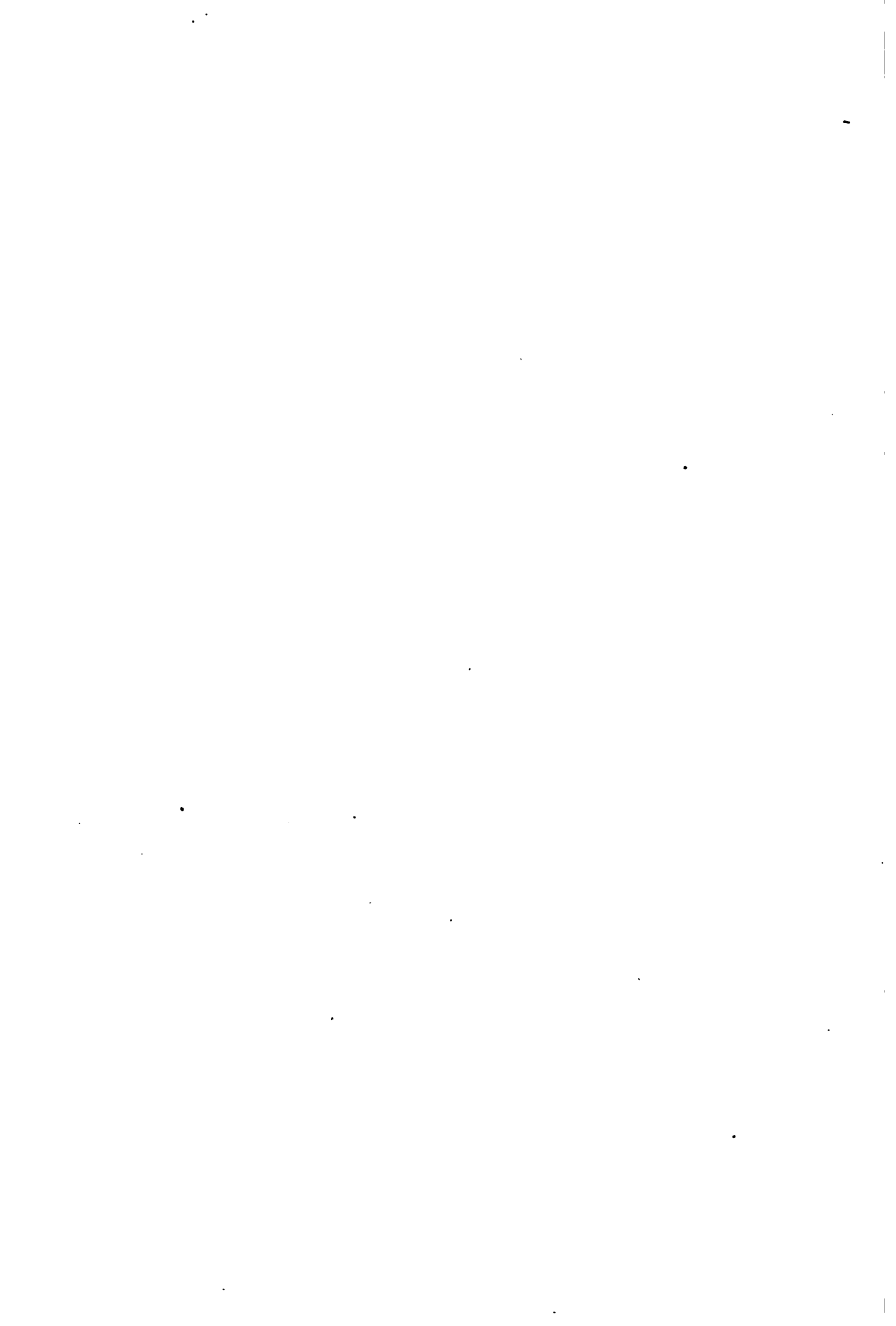


THE APPIAN WAY

A view in the neighborhood of Rome. The arches, seen in the background, belong to the aqueduct built by the emperor Claudius in 52 A.D.



THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS AT ROME



LESSON LIV

DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS

Intransitive verbs meaning to *believe, favor, injure, obey, persuade, please, resist, be eager for*, and others of like meaning, govern the dative of the indirect object. In each case the dative of indirect object is the person or thing to which a benefit, injury, or feeling is directed.

Examples :

Militibus persuādēbit.

He will persuade (offer persuasion to) the **soldiers**.

Verbīs puerī crēdunt.

They believe (give belief to) the boy's words.

VOCABULARY

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, *trust, believe.*

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, *be favorable to, favor.*

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, *hurt, injure.*

pāreō, pārēre, pārui, —, *obey.*

persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsūrus, *persuade.*

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitūrus, *please.*

resistō, resistere, restitī, —, *resist, oppose.*

studeō, studēre, studui, —, *give attention to, be eager for.*

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Poena dūra rēgīnae nōn persuāsīt.
2. Quis bellō studet?
3. Amīcīs malīs restiterant.
4. Servīs miserrimīs placēbimus.
5. Fortūna bonīs favet.

Translate into Latin :

1. The arrows will injure the children.
2. Why were you [*sing.*] not obeying (your) mother?
3. The goddess is unfriendly to the queen's daughters.
4. The soldiers are resisting the hard training.
5. The very wretched captive will be eager for flight.

LESSON LV

MARIUS RECALLED INTO ITALY

Ōlim Germānī cum fēminīs et liberīs ad Ītaliā properāverant et cōpiās Rōmānās māximō proeliō vīcerant. Rōmānī māximē territī sunt.

Marius, clārus imperator,¹ multās victōriās iam reportāverat, sed tum in Āfricā bellum gerēbat. Mox ex Āfricā in Ītaliā vocātus est. Omnēs cōpiae novae ā Mariō sine morā exercitae sunt. Disciplinā dūrā mīlitēs exercuit. Tum cum pedītibus et equitibus, quī² iam proeliō studēbant, ad castra Germānōrum properāvit. Diū et ācriter pūgnāvērunt et barbarōs fugāvērunt. Multī barbarī in fugā ab equitibus necātī sunt. Marius pater³ patriae vocātus est.

¹ A noun that explains or identifies another noun is said to be in apposition with that noun, and is always in the same case with it. Imperātor explains or identifies Marius. ² quī = *who*.

³ Pater is a predicate noun after the passive voice of the transitive verb vocō.

VOCABULARY

*Āfrica, -ae, f., Africa.**mora, -ae, f., delay.**exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus, train, exercise, drill, employ.**sine, prep. with abl., without.*

LESSON LVI

VOCABULARY REVIEW

Follow suggestions in Lesson XXXVII.

<i>Āfrica</i>	<i>pāreō</i>	<i>melior</i>
<i>auxilium</i>	<i>persuādeō</i>	<i>minimus</i>
<i>aurum</i>	<i>placeō</i>	<i>optimus</i>
<i>epistula</i>	<i>redūcō</i>	<i>pessimus</i>
<i>explōrātor</i>	<i>regō</i>	<i>plūrimus</i>
<i>fortūna</i>	<i>relinquō</i>	<i>plūs</i>
<i>lingua</i>	<i>remittō</i>	<i>posterus</i>
<i>nihil</i>	<i>resistō</i>	<i>proximus</i>
<i>ōrātor</i>	<i>scribō</i>	<i>similis</i>
<i>pāx</i>	<i>studeō</i>	<i>summus</i>
<i>agō</i>	<i>trādō</i>	<i>superior</i>
<i>āmittō</i>	<i>vincō</i>	<i>audācter</i>
<i>crēdō</i>	<i>vivō</i>	<i>bene</i>
<i>cōgō</i>	<i>difficilis</i>	<i>breviter</i>
<i>cōnscribō</i>	<i>dissimilis</i>	<i>cārē</i>
<i>dēfendō</i>	<i>extrēmus</i>	<i>graviter</i>
<i>dūcō</i>	<i>facilis</i>	<i>līberē</i>
<i>ēdūcō</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>miserē</i>
<i>exerceō</i>	<i>gracilis</i>	<i>pulchrē</i>
<i>faveō</i>	<i>humilis</i>	<i>quam</i>
<i>gerō</i>	<i>īnferior</i>	<i>sine</i>
<i>mittō</i>	<i>īmus</i>	
<i>noceō</i>	<i>māximus</i>	

Compare all adjectives and adverbs in the vocabulary on page 83.

Give English derivatives from each of the following Latin words :

auxilium	extrēmus	relinquō
agō	mittō	resistō
dēfendō	optimus	scribō
dūcō	pessimus	similis
explōrātor	proximus	superior

What Latin words are suggested by the following English words?

facility	maximum	minimum
relic	reduction	humiliate
credible	pacify	exercise
invincible	linguistic	persuasion
plural	posterity	difficulty

LESSON LVII

THE FOURTH DECLENSION. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

The fourth declension consists of those nouns whose genitive ends in **-ūs**. Most nouns ending in **-us** are masculine. **Domus**, *house* ; **manus**, *hand* ; and a few others are feminine. The neuters end in **-ū**.

Lacus, *lake*, has the ending **-ubus** in the dative and the ablative plural ; **portus**, *harbor*, has either **-ubus** or **-ibus**.

Domus, *house, home*, has some forms of the second declension.

Exercitus, m., army. Base, exercit-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	exercitus	exercitūs
<i>Gen.</i>	exercitūs	exercituum
<i>Dat.</i>	exercitui (-ū)	exercitibus
<i>Acc.</i>	exercitum	exercitūs
<i>Abl.</i>	exercitū	exercitibus

Manus, f., hand. Base, man-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	manus	manūs
<i>Gen.</i>	manūs	manuum
<i>Dat.</i>	manui (-ū)	manibus
<i>Acc.</i>	manum	manūs
<i>Abl.</i>	manū	manibus

Terminations. — Masculine and Feminine

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	-us	-ūs
<i>Gen.</i>	-ūs	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	-ui (-ū)	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	-um	-ūs
<i>Abl.</i>	-ū	-ibus

Domus, f., house, home. Base, dom-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	domus	domūs
<i>Gen.</i>	domūs, -ī	domuum, -ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	domui, -ō	domibus
<i>Acc.</i>	domum	domōs, -ūs
<i>Abl.</i>	domō, -ū	domibus

Cornū, n., horn, wing (of an army). Base, corn-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	cornū	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	cornūs	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	cornū	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cornū	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	cornū	cornibus

Terminations. — Neuter

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	-ū	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	-ūs	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	-ū	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	-ū	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	-ū	-ibus

Compare the endings of the fourth declension with those of the other declensions.

VOCABULARY

adventus, adventūs, m., approach, arrival.

equitātus, equitātūs, m., cavalry.

impetus, impetūs, m., attack. impetum facere in, with acc., to make an attack on.

metus, metūs, m., fear, dread.

occāsus, occāsūs, m., setting.

dexter, dextra, dextrum, right, right hand.

sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left, left hand.

Decline :

1. Dextrum cornū.
2. Prīmus adventus.
3. Manus minima.

RULE

Real cause is usually expressed by the ablative without a preposition, but cause stated as a reason is often expressed by the accusative with ob or propter.

Examples :

Metū hostium properāvimus.

We hastened **from fear** (because of fear) of the enemy.

Puerum propter amicitiam servāvī.

I saved the boy **on account of friendship**.

LESSON LVIII

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Fēlix es quia domum pulcherrimam habēs.
2. Milītēs fidī diligentīā laudātī erunt.
3. Exercitus cum equitātū hostium pūgnāverat.
4. Locum metū pīrātārum reliquimus.
5. Rēgīna manum parvam habet.
6. Occāsus sōlis pulcherrimus erat.
7. Multī milītēs ā dextrō cornū ¹ vīsī erant.
8. Fēlicēs propter pācem novam erāmus.
9. Nāvēs minōrēs in portū sunt.
10. Impetus equitum ācerrimus erit.

Translate into Latin :

1. We resisted the army of the Germans.
2. The citizens feared the approach of the armies.

¹ ā dextrō cornū, on the right wing ; ā sinistrō, on the left.

3. They blame the girl for (her) fear of the wind.
4. I see a large ship on a rather small lake.
5. The general is on the left wing of the army.
6. Why do you [*sing.*] write with (your) left hand?
7. The army is obeying the general.
8. You [*pl.*] will save (your) friends on account of friendship.
9. The left wing was not like the right (wing).
10. We praised the soldier because of his valor.

LESSON LIX

FIFTH DECLENSION. ABLATIVE OF TIME

In the fifth declension the genitive singular ends in *-ēī*. The genitive and dative singular end in *-ēī* when a vowel precedes, in *-ēi* when a consonant precedes.

All nouns of this declension are feminine except *diēs*, *day*, and *meridiēs*, *noon*, which are masculine. *Diēs*, however, is sometimes feminine in the singular.

Only *diēs*, *day*, and *rēs*, *thing*, are declined throughout. Most nouns of this declension have only the singular; but *aciēs*, *line of battle*, *spēs*, *hope*, and a few others, have nominative and accusative plural forms.

Diēs, m., day. Base, di-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	diēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī	diērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī	diēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	diēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	diēbus

Rēs, f., thing, affair. Base, **r-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	rēs	rēs
<i>Gen.</i>	rei	rērum
<i>Dat.</i>	rei	rēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	rem	rēs
<i>Abl.</i>	rē	rēbus

Terminations

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	-ēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	-ēi, -ei	-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	-ēi, -ei	-ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	-em	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	-ē	-ēbus

VOCABULARY

aciēs, aciēi, f., line of battle, battle array.

fidēs, fidei, f., faith, fidelity, confidence.

spēs, spei, f., hope.

rēspūblica, reipūblicae, f. (rēs and pūblica), public affair, state. Both parts of the word are declined.

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus, run.

petō, petere, petivī or petiī, petitus, seek, ask.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, place, put. castra pōnere, to pitch camp.

ante, prep. with acc., before.

post, prep. with acc., after, behind.

Decline :

1. **Aciēs longissima.**

3. **Spēs māior.**

2. **Diēs brevissimus.**

RULE

Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Examples :

Aestāte diēs longissimā sunt.

In summer the days are the longest.

Prīmā hōrā milītēs cōscripsit.

He enlisted the soldiers at the first hour.

LESSON LX

EXERCISE

Translate, telling to what declension each noun belongs :

1. Rēx fidem cīvium petīvit.
2. Dūcēs castra in locō idōneō pōnent.
3. Hieme flūmina sunt alta.
4. Hostēs prīmam aciem fortius oppūgnābant.
5. Metū militum cucurrimus.
6. Ante adventum imperātōris legiōnēs nōn viderāmus.
7. Aestāte diēs noctibus longiōrēs sunt.
8. Post perīculum bellī erat spēs in omnibus rēbus.
9. Prīmō annō Rōmānī cōsulem creāvērunt.
10. Optimī cīvēs rei pūblicae fidī sunt.

Translate into Latin :

1. We remained in the town many days.
2. They will leave (*discēdō*) on the first day of the month.

3. I shall leave (*discēdō*) in a few days.
4. The sun sees all things on land and sea.
5. From the hill we had seen the enemy's line of battle.
6. We were seeking places suitable for a line of battle.
7. The hope of a long life has always pleased men.
8. The foot-soldiers will run because of (their) great fear.
9. The state had put (its) hope in good leaders.
10. We shall have pitched camp before the general's arrival.

LESSON LXI

EXPRESSION OF PLACE, LOCATIVE CASE

Review carefully the general ways in which place is expressed in Latin.

Names of towns, small islands, *domus*, *home* ; *rūs*, *country*, and a few other words omit the prepositions in *expressions of place*.

Examples :

Caesar Rōmae mānsit.

Caesar remained at Rome.

Caesar Rōmā properāvit.

Caesar hastened from Rome.

Caesar Rōmam properāvit.

Caesar hastened to Rome.

RULE

Place in which *with names of towns and small islands, if they are singular and of the first or second declension, is expressed by the locative case; otherwise by the locative ablative without a preposition.*

The form of the locative is like the genitive singular.

Puer Rōmae mānsit.

The boy remained at **Rome**.

Puer domī mānsit.

The boy remained at **home**.

Puer rūri mānsit.

The boy remained in the **country**.

Here **Rōmae**, **domī**, and **rūri** are locatives.

Puer Athēnis mānsit.

The boy remained at **Athens**.

Athēnis is a locative ablative. **Athēnae** is a plural noun and there is no plural locative case form.

VOCABULARY

Caesar, **Caesaris**, m., *Caesar*.

Cicerō, **Cicerōnis**, m., *Cicero*.

Corinthus, -i, f., *Corinth*.

Genāva, -ae, f., *Geneva*.

EXERCISE

Translate into English:

1. **Corinthī** multa īnsīgnia aurī vidēbimus.
2. **Caesar** **Genāvam** exercitum māximum dūxerat.

3. Rōmā Cicerō rūs properāvit.
4. Fīlium domī docēbam.
5. Imperātor Athēnās cum exercitū māgnō prope-
rābit.

Translate into Latin :

1. My brother had remained at home.
2. You [*sing.*] have a beautiful home in the coun-
try.
3. The soldiers of the first legion were hiding at
Rome.
4. The children are hurrying home.
5. I had hastened from home.

LESSON LXII

CONJUGATION OF SUM. PERFECT SYSTEM. DATIVE OF POSSESSOR

Principal parts: sum, esse, fui, futūrus. .

Perfect Indicative

SINGULAR

1. fu'ī, *I was, have been.*
2. fuis'tī, *you were, have been.*
3. fu'it, *he, she, or it was, has been.*

PLURAL

1. fu'imus, *we were, have been.*
2. fuis'tis, *you were, have been.*
3. fuē'runt or fuē're, *they were, have been.*

Pluperfect Indicative**SINGULAR**

1. fu'eram, *I had been.*
2. fu'erās, *you had been.*
3. fu'erat, *he, she, or it had been.*

PLURAL

1. fuerā'mus, *we had been.*
2. fuerā'tis, *you had been.*
3. fu'erant, *they had been.*

Future Perfect Indicative**SINGULAR**

1. fu'erō, *I shall have been.*
2. fu'eris, *you will have been.*
3. fu'erit, *he, she, or it will have been.*

PLURAL

1. fue'rimus, *we shall have been.*
2. fue'ritis, *you will have been.*
3. fu'erint, *they will have been.*

RULE

The dative is used to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.

Examples :

Puellae rosa est.

(A rose is to the girl.)

The girl has a rose.

Another way of saying, Puella rosam habet.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Virō fuerat pulcherrima domus.
2. Legiōnēs multōs diēs Rōmae fuerint.
3. Cōpia frūmentī in agrīs fuit.
4. Militibus multa tēla erunt.
5. Rōmae fuimus.
6. Custōs optimus fuerās.
7. Victōrēs eritis.
8. Rēgnum māximum erat.
9. Magistrō sunt librī ūtilissimī.
10. Itinera difficillima fuērunt.

Translate into Latin :

1. Cicero's letter was full of hope.
2. The Romans had very many ships.
3. I shall have been in Athens many months.
4. We had been in camp a day.
5. The queen has a very large forest.
6. Italy, the native land of the Romans, will be free.
7. Why had you [*pl.*] not been on the sea?
8. The boy will have a white dove.
9. They will have been weak because of the lack of food.
10. Victory had been doubtful for a long time.

LESSON LXIII

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

Cūr, ubi, quid, quis, etc., are used to introduce Latin questions. When there is no special interrogative word, a question may be indicated by the enclitic **-ne**, joined to the emphatic word, usually the first word; **-ne** has no meaning by itself; it is merely the sign of a question. The syllable before **-ne** always receives the accent.

The answer *Yes* is usually expressed by repeating the sentence; the answer *No* by repeating the sentence with the negative word **nōn**, *not*.

Duxne signum videt?

Does the leader see the signal?

Dux signum videt.

Yes. (The leader sees the signal.)

Dux signum nōn videt.

No. (The leader does not see the signal.)

Fābulāsne nārrābis?

Will you tell stories?

Fābulās nārrābō.

Yes. (I shall tell stories.)

Fābulās nōn nārrābō.

No. (I shall not tell stories.)

If the answer *Yes* is implied, the question is introduced by **nōnne**. If the answer *No* is implied, the question is introduced by **num**.

Nōnne dux signum videt?

Does not the leader see the signal?



LAOCOÖN AND HIS CHILDREN

Vatican Museum, Rome

A product of the art school of Rhodes (about 150 B.C.)

Dux signum videt.

Yes.

Num dux signum videt?

The leader does not see the signal, does he?

Dux signum nōn videt.

No.

RULE

Verbs meaning to separate, remove, deprive of, lack, be absent, and the like require an ablative to complete their meaning, with or without the prepositions ab, dē, or ex. This is called the Ablative of Separation.

A preposition is regularly used when the separation is literal.

Silvam ā mōnstrīs liberāvit.

He freed the forest from monsters.

A preposition is regularly omitted when the separation is figurative.

Rēgem cūrā liberābimus.

We shall free the king from care.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Estne nūntius in viā?
2. Mīlitēs ā proeliō continēbantur.
3. Nōnne audācia imperātōris vidēbātur?
4. Num servī miserrimī erant?
5. Ā cōnsule Rōmānō liberāminī.

Translate into Latin :

1. Was the leader of the foot-soldiers with the consul? No.
2. Are we not taught by good fathers?
3. I shall free the city from danger.
4. The slaves have not been freed from fear, have they?
5. Will the enemy be conquered by Caesar? Yes.

LESSON LXIV

NUMERALS. GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE

Cardinal numerals are those answering the question *How many?* as *ūnus, one* ; *duo, two*, etc.

Ordinal numerals, derived in most cases from the cardinals, are those answering the question *In what order?* as *primus, first* ; *secundus, second*, etc.

The first twenty of the cardinals and ordinals are :

<i>Cardinals</i>	<i>Ordinals</i>
1. ūnus, -a, -um	primus
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus
3. trēs, tria	tertius
4. quattuor	quārtus
5. quīnque	quīntus
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	septimus
8. octō	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecimus

13. tredecim	tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15. quindecim	quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus
17. septendecim	septimus decimus
18. duodēviginti	duodēvicēsimus
19. ūndēviginti	ūndēvicēsimus
20. vīginti	vicēsimus
21. vīginti ūnus	vicēsimus primus
(ūnus et vīginti)	

Declension of ūnus, duō, and trēs

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

The plural of ūnus is regular, like that of māgnus.

<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

Masc. and Fem.

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	trīs, trēs	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	tribus	tribus

The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum**, *one hundred*, inclusive, are indeclinable. The hundreds above **centum**, *one hundred*, are declined like the plural of **māgnus**.

dūcentī, -ae, -a, *two hundred*.

dūcentōrum, -ārum, -ōrum.

The ordinals are declined like **māgnus**.

RULE

The genitive denoting the whole of which a part is taken is called the Genitive of the Whole (Partitive Genitive).

Examples :

Caesar erat omnium imperātōrum clārissimus.

Caesar was the most famous of all generals.

Fortissimī militum in proeliō erant.

The bravest of the soldiers were in the battle.

NOTE. — Cardinal numbers except **mille**, *a thousand*, regularly take the ablative with **ex** or **dē** instead of the Genitive of the Whole.

Decem ex militibus necātī sunt.

Ten of the soldiers were killed.

Declension of mille

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	mille	mīlia
<i>Gen.</i>	mille	mīlium
<i>Dat.</i>	mille	mīlibus
<i>Acc.</i>	mille	mīlia
<i>Abl.</i>	mille	mīlibus

Mille in the singular is usually an indeclinable adjective; in the plural it is a neuter noun and takes the genitive of the whole. Thus, **mille hominēs**, *a thousand men* ; but **tria milia hominum** (lit., *three thousands of men*), *three thousand men*.

VOCABULARY

novissimum agmen, n., *rear* (of a line of march).

primum agmen, n., *van* (of an army).

fluctus, -ūs, m., *wave, billow*.

Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul*.

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*.

palūs, **palūdis**, f., *swamp, marsh*.

medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle*.

mediā nocte, *at midnight*.

mediō colle, *halfway up the hill*.

LESSON LXV

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Rēx trīs filiōs et ūnam filiam habet.
2. Pars mīlitum domī manēbit.
3. Legiō sexta in Galliā mānserit.
4. Audācissimī mīlitum in palūde māgnā erant.
5. Nāvēs fluctibus dēlētae erant.
6. Ūnus ex captīvīs frāter rēgis erat.
7. Mediā nocte castra Gallōrum oppūgnābantur.
8. Novissimum agmen in mediō colle vīsum erat.
9. Flūmen erat altum octō pedēs.

10. Caesar in Galliam cum duābus legiōnibus properāvit.

Translate into Latin :

1. Five legions will be led into Gaul.
2. Did not Cicero have two homes in the country?
3. A part of the third legion was fighting in the marsh.
4. The Romans had a fleet of ten ships at Athens.
5. You [*pl.*] will see your friends at the seventh hour.
6. The mountain was nine thousand feet high.
7. The Roman year had ten months.
8. We saw a thousand horses.
9. Two of (my) sisters live at Rome.
10. I have witnessed a fifth victory.

LESSON LXVI

REVIEW LESSON

Review all constructions studied up to this time.

Translate, giving special attention to construction of nouns and to form of verbs :

1. Hieme diēs brevissimī sunt.
2. Urbs pulcherrima ignī dēlēta est.
3. Pācem dēsīderāmus.
4. Victōria spem mīlitum mūtābit.
5. Cucurristīne timōre?
6. Exercitus māior ex urbe ēductus erit.

7. Equī in silvam agentur.
8. Fortissimī virōrum ab hostibus victī sunt.
9. Nautae in silvā exclāmābant.
10. In lūdō sunt centum puerī.
11. Cūr fuerant mīlītēs inimīcī imperātōribus?
12. Occāsū sōlis pīrātae cum incolis insulae pūg-
nābunt.
13. Explōrātor gladiō gravī custōdem vulnerāvit.
14. Cūr periculō liberōs nōn liberāvistis?
15. Bellum pācī dissimillimum est.
16. Avēs māgnā cum celeritāte volant.
17. Iūdicī multī librī sunt.
18. Duōs annōs Genāvae mānsī.
19. Ferae equīs nocuerant.

LESSON LXVII

VERBS. FOURTH CONJUGATION. ACTIVE

Verbs of the fourth conjugation end in **-ire** in the present infinitive: **audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus, hear**. The present stem is **audī-**; perfect stem, **audīv-**; participial stem, **audīt-**.

In the present indicative the personal endings are added regularly to the present stem, but in the third person plural **-u-** is inserted between the stem and the ending.

Present Indicative Active

SINGULAR

1. **au'diō, I hear, am hearing, do hear.**
2. **au'dīs, you hear, are hearing, do hear.**
3. **au'dit, he, she, or it hears, is hearing, does hear.**

PLURAL

1. **audi'mus**, *we hear, are hearing, do hear.*
2. **audi'tis**, *you hear, are hearing, do hear.*
3. **au'diunt**, *they hear, are hearing, do hear.*

Imperfect Indicative Active

In the imperfect tense **-ē-** is inserted between the present stem and the tense sign **-bā-**.

SINGULAR

1. **audiē'bam**, *I was hearing, heard, did hear.*
2. **audiē'bās**, *you were hearing, etc.*
3. **audiē'bat**, *he, she, or it was hearing, etc.*

PLURAL

1. **audiēbā'mus**, *we were hearing, heard, did hear.*
2. **audiēbā'tis**, *you were hearing, etc.*
3. **audiē'bant**, *they were hearing, etc.*

Future Indicative Active

In the future tense the tense sign **-a-** in the first person singular and **-ē-** in the rest of the tense is inserted between the present stem and personal ending.

SINGULAR

1. **au'diam**, *I shall hear.*
2. **au'diēs**, *you will hear.*
3. **au'diet**, *he, she, or it will hear.*

PLURAL

1. **audiē'mus**, *we shall hear.*
2. **audiē'tis**, *you will hear.*
3. **au'dient**, *they will hear.*

VOCABULARY

lātītūdō, -inis, f., *width*.

longitūdō, -inis, f., *length*.

lūx, lūcis, f., *light*. *prīma lūx*, f., *dawn, daybreak*.

passus, -ūs, m., *pace*. *mīlle passus*, a *mile* (a thousand paces). *mīlia passuum*, pl., *miles*.

conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventūrus (con and veniō),
come together, assemble.

mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītus, *fortify*.

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventūrus, *come*.

EXERCISE

Conjugate in the present, imperfect, and future indicative in the active voice :

1. Veniō.

4. Teneō.

2. Agō.

5. Mūniō.

3. Dēsīderō.

Analyze, and translate the following verb forms :

1. Audītis.

6. Venit.

2. Mūniēbās.

7. Mūniēbāmus.

3. Conveniunt.

8. Audiet.

4. Veniam.

9. Veniēbam.

5. Mūniētis.

10. Conveniēmus.

Translate into Latin :

1. They will hear.

2. We are coming.

3. You [*sing.*] were coming.

4. He does fortify.

5. You [*pl.*] will assemble.

6. I was fortifying.
7. They come.
8. We shall fortify.
9. They were assembling.
10. I am coming.

LESSON LXVIII

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Tribus diēbus ad ripam Rhēnī hostēs convenient.
2. Imperātor exercitum sex mīlia passuum dūxerat.
3. Lātītūdō flūminis māxima est.
4. Castra altissimō mūrō mūniēbāmus.
5. Caesar castra movet quia adventum hostium audit.
6. Veniētisne prīmā lūce?
7. Nautae ex nāvibus veniunt.
8. Casam fossā lātiōre mūniēbam.
9. Octō ex oppidīs oppūgnāta erant.
10. Rēs multās audiēbāsne?

Translate into Latin :

1. I shall hear the chief's words.
2. The ambassadors were assembling.
3. The length of the field is much greater than its width.
4. The place was suitable for a line of battle.

5. We shall come at midnight.
6. Do you [*sing.*] hear the waves?
7. Will you [*pl.*] assemble at the fourth hour?
8. The scout will hear many things.
9. Where were they pitching camp?
10. The first cohort was sent back.

LESSON LXIX

FOURTH CONJUGATION. ACTIVE. PERFECT
SYSTEM

Perfect Indicative Active

SINGULAR

1. *audī'vī, I heard, have heard, did hear.*
2. *audīvis'tī, you heard, have heard, did hear.*
3. *audī'vit, he, she, or it heard, has heard, did hear.*

PLURAL

1. *audī'vimus, we heard, have heard, did hear.*
2. *audīvis'tis, you heard, have heard, did hear.*
3. *audīvē'runt or audīvē're, they heard, have heard, did hear.*

Pluperfect Indicative Active

SINGULAR

1. *audī'veram, I had heard.*
2. *audī'verās, you had heard.*
3. *audī'verat, he, she, or it had heard.*

PLURAL

1. *audīverā'mus, we had heard.*
2. *audīverā'tis, you had heard.*
3. *audī'verant, they had heard.*

Future Perfect Indicative Active

SINGULAR

1. **audi'verō**, *I shall have heard.*
2. **audi'veris**, *you will have heard.*
3. **audi'verit**, *he, she, or it will have heard.*

PLURAL

1. **audi'verimus**, *we shall have heard.*
2. **audi'veritis**, *you will have heard.*
3. **audi'verint**, *they will have heard.*

VOCABULARY

aquila, -ae, f., *eagle*.

clāmor, -ōris, m., *shout, clamor*.

negōtium, **negōtī**, n., *business, affair, matter*.

scelus, **sceleris**, n., *crime*.

custōdiō, **custōdire**, **custōdivī**, **custōdītus**, *guard, watch*.

dēsiliō, **dēsilīre**, **dēsilui**, **dēsultus**, *leap down*.

EXERCISE

Conjugate in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, active:

- | | | |
|----------------|---------------------|------------------|
| 1. Agō. | 3. Veniō. | 5. Dēleō. |
| 2. Dō. | 4. Custōdiō. | |

Translate, analyzing each verb form:

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Dēsiluerat. | 6. Custōdiverās. |
| 2. Audīverimus. | 7. Dēsilui. |
| 3. Vēnerō. | 8. Vēnerunt. |
| 4. Convēneritis. | 9. Audīverint. |
| 5. Mūniverant. | 10. Custōdivit. |

Translate into Latin :

1. We had leaped down.
2. I have watched.
3. They have heard.
4. He will have come.
5. You [*pl.*] had assembled.
6. We shall have come.
7. I had fortified.
8. They had seen.
9. You [*sing.*] have written.
10. She will have shouted.

LESSON LXX

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Puerī in fluctūs dēsiluērunt.
2. Audīvistīne ōrātiōnem Cicerōnis dē pāce?
3. Mīlitēs ducēs in arce custōdiēbant.
4. Clāmōrēs cīvium audīverāmus.
5. Omnium avium aquila est celerrima.
6. Hostēs in urbem vēnerint.
7. Num scelus spectāvistī?
8. Liberī domum vēnerant.
9. In negōtiō nōn fuerāmus.
10. Māgnā celeritāte cucurrit.

Translate into Latin :

1. They had assembled in the temple.
2. The day had come.
3. We shall have guarded the state.

4. He leaped down from the bridge.
5. Have you [*pl.*] not heard the shouts?
6. I had come six miles in two hours.
7. Will they assemble before the orator's arrival?
8. The clouds have been black.
9. I have been on the lake.
10. We have feared the enemy's attack.

LESSON LXXI

CONVERSATIONAL EXERCISE

Ubi hominēs fortissimī erant?
Hominēs fortissimī in exercitū erant.
Erantne plūrimī hominēs in exercitū?
Erant duodēvigintī mīlia hominum.
Cūr saepissimē laudābantur?
Audāciā et virtūte laudābantur.
Quis hominēs dūcēbat?
Caesar hominēs dūcēbat.
Cūr Caesar hominēs dūcēbat?
Quia imperātor māximus erat.
Audisne clāmōrēs servōrum?
Clāmōrēs servōrum audiō.
Cūr servī exclāmant?
Servī exclāmant quia in perīculō māgnō sunt.
Liberābisne servōs perīculō?
Perīculō servōs liberābō.
Labōrantne servī cum dīligentiā?
Cum dīligentiā nōn labōrant.
Cūr servī cum dīligentiā nōn labōrant?

Quia dominōs nōn amant.

Cūr dominōs nōn amant?

Dominī servīs pecūniam nōn dant.

Dominī filiīs filiābusque ¹ omnem pecūniam dant.

LESSON LXXII

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aciēs	occāsus	duo
adventus	palūs	medius
aquila	passus	mīlle
clāmor	portus	novem
cornū	rēs	quārtus
diēs	rēspūblica	quīnque
domus	scelus	secundus
equitātus	spēs	sex
exercitus	audiō	septem
fidēs	conveniō	sinister
fluctus	currō	trēs
impetus	custōdiō	ūnus
lacus	dēsiliō	ante
lātitudō	mūniō	ob
longitūdō	petō	post
lūx	pōnō	propter
manus	veniō	
metus	decem	
negōtium	dexter	

Give English derivatives from the Latin words at the top of the next page :

¹ Que, conj., and (always appended to another word which in construction belongs after it).

adventus	dōmus	negōtium
audiō	duo	petō
clāmor	fidēs	pōnō
conveniō	impetus	trēs
currō	manus	ūnus

What Latin words are suggested by the following English words?

approximate	fluctuate	remit
quarter	similar	verbal
decimal	partial	timorous
munitions	resist	solar
exponent	inscribe	annual

Give other English derivatives from the Latin words suggested.

LESSON LXXIII

THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

Nine pronominal adjectives of the first and second declensions have the ending **-ius** in the genitive singular and **-ī** in the dative singular, for all genders, instead of the regular endings. In other cases of the singular and in the plural they are declined like **longus**, **liber**, or **pulcher**.

Alius has **-d** in the nominative and accusative singular neuter.

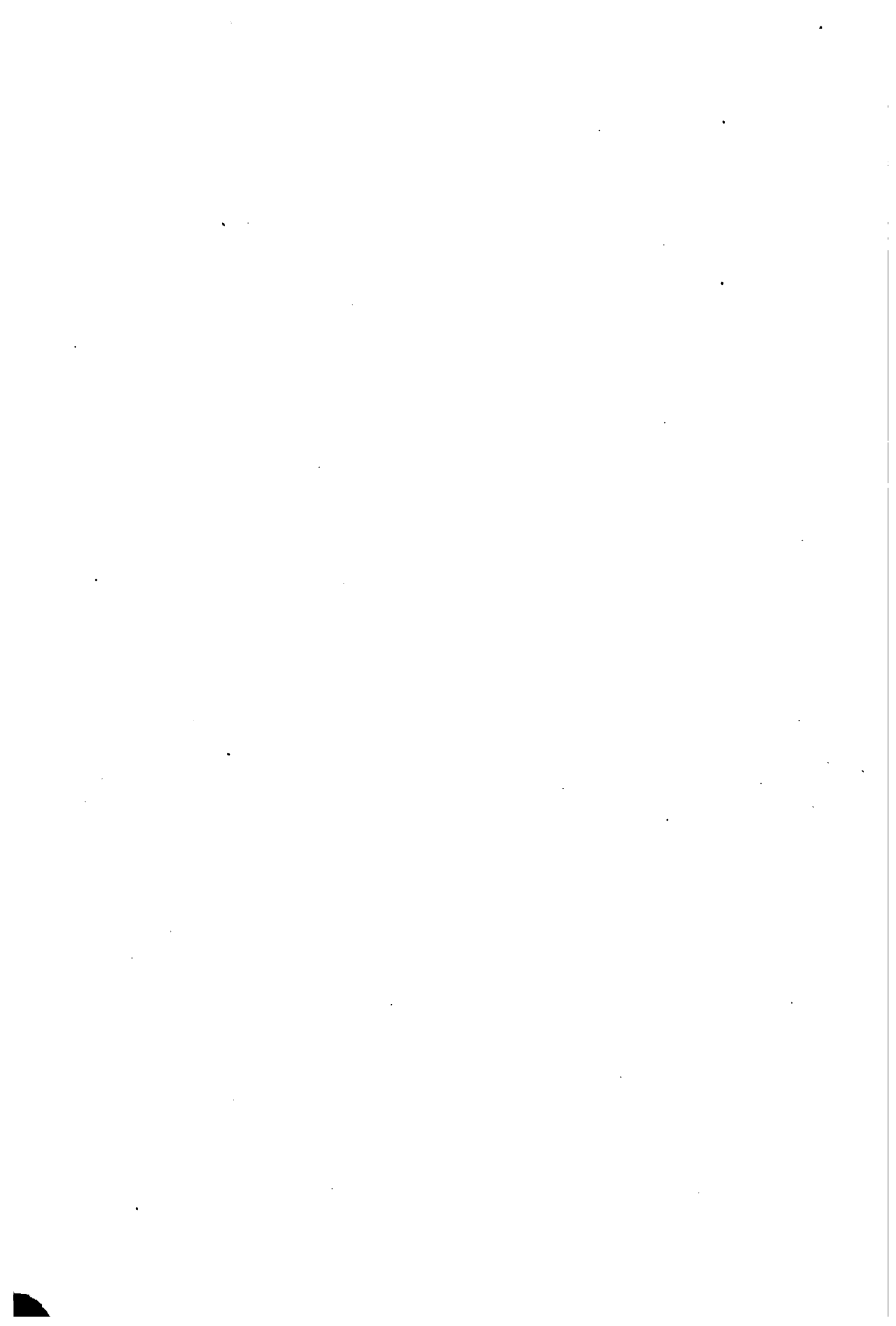
These adjectives regularly stand before their nouns.

Because these peculiar case endings are found also in the declension of pronouns, these adjectives are sometimes called the *pronominal adjectives*.



CAESAR'S LANDING IN BRITAIN.

From Gulliver.



VOCABULARY

alius, alia, aliud, another, other (of several).

alter, altera, alterum, the other (of two).

uter, utra, utrum, which (of two).

neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither (of two).

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, one, alone ; (in the plural) *only*.

ūllus, ūlla, ūllum, any.

nūllus, nūlla, nūllum, none, no.

sōlus, sōla, sōlum, alone, sole.

tōtus, tōta, tōtum, whole, entire.

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud
<i>Gen.</i>	alius	alius	alius
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī
<i>Acc.</i>	alium	aliam	aliud
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	aliī	aliae	alia
<i>Gen.</i>	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
<i>Acc.</i>	aliōs	aliās	alia
<i>Abl.</i>	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

Alter, altera, alterum . . . alter, altera, alterum means *the one . . . the other* (of two); *alius, alia, aliud . . . alius, alia, aliud, one . . . another* (of any number); pl., *aliī, aliae, alia . . . aliī, aliae, alia, some . . . others*.

Altera urbs est māgna, altera parva.

The one city is large, the other small.

EXERCISE

Decline :

1. Tōta urbs. 2. Uter rēx. 3. Neutrum cornū.

Translate into English :

1. Virtūs ūnīus virī tōtam rempūblicam servāvit.
2. Per vallem sine ūllō timōre cucurrimus.
3. Aliī puerī aquam, aliī terram amant.
4. Utra puella librum habet? Neutra.
5. Erant nūllae nāvēs in portū.
6. Fēmina sōla cēnam parāverat.

Translate into Latin :

1. Neither place will be suitable for a line of battle.
2. To Caesar alone they announced the enemy's arrival.
3. The one town was in Gaul ; the other in Italy.
4. We have no soldiers.
5. Some will run into the marsh ; others into the forest.
6. Is there any lack of food among the soldiers ?

LESSON LXXIV**PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS**

A *personal pronoun* is one that shows the person speaking, spoken to, or spoken of.

Ego, *I*, is the personal pronoun of the first person ; **tū**, *you*, of the second person. The personal pronoun of the third person is supplied by the demonstrative *is*.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	ego, I	nōs, we
Gen.	meī, of me	nostrum, nostrī, of us
Dat.	mihi, to or for me	nōbīs, to or for us
Acc.	mē, me	nōs, us
Abl.	mē, by me, etc.	nōbīs, by us, etc.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	tū, you	vōs, you
Gen.	tuī	vestrum, vestrī
Dat.	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	tē	vōs
Abl.	tē	vōbīs

A *reflexive pronoun* is one that is used in the predicate to refer back to the subject of the sentence or clause in which it stands. Reflexive pronouns are declined like the personal pronouns of the same person except that they have no nominative.

The reflexive pronoun of the third person (*himself, herself, itself, themselves*) has a special form, used only in these senses.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	—	—
Gen.	sui, of himself, etc.	sui, of themselves
Dat.	sibi	sibi
Acc.	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē
Abl.	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Magister mihi librum dedit.
2. Cīvēs vōbīs cibum praebebunt.

3. Tē in prōvinciam mittam.
4. Hominēs malī sibi saepe nocent.
5. Vōbīscum ¹ amīcitiam cōfirmābimus.
6. Caesar sēcum ūnam legiōnem habuit.

Translate into Latin :

1. Charles and I ² remained in the country three months.
2. He will send you all to Rome.
3. Have you [*pl.*] ten legions with you?
4. You [*sing.*] will easily persuade me.
5. The scout had announced to us the leader's arrival.
6. They carried food with them (themselves).

LESSON LXXV

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

A *possessive pronoun* is one which denotes possession. Possessive pronouns are the adjective forms of the personal and reflexive pronouns. They are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions, and agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

meus, -a, -um, my, mine.

meī, -ae, -ī.

¹ The preposition **cum** when used with personal, reflexive, interrogative, or relative pronouns is added to them, forming one word with them.

² **Ego et Carolus** in Latin.

VOCABULARY

noster, nostrā, nostrum, *our, ours*.

tuus, -a, -um, *your, yours* (referring to one person).

vester, vestra, vestrum, *your, yours* (referring to more than one).

suus, -a, -um, *his, her, hers, its, their, theirs* (according to the subject).

EXERCISE

Decline :

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------|
| 1. Meus cliēns. | 4. Tua aetās. |
| 2. Vestrum insigne. | 5. Suus pēs. |
| 3. Nostra salūs. | |

Translate into English :

1. Mea māter mihi est cārissima.
2. Nōs omnēs ōrātiōnēs laudāvimus.
3. Castra in vestrō agrō posueram.
4. Caesar in Galliam cum suis militibus properābit.
5. Cūr nostris amīcis frūmentum nōn dās?
6. Amīcus tuae sorōris sēsē necāvit.

Translate into Latin :

1. The scout will be sent with us.
2. Whom do you [*sing.*] teach? I teach myself.
3. Our men fought more bravely than the enemy.
4. My brother is a little taller (taller by a little) than your father.
5. The slaves will fight for¹ their masters.

¹ *pro*, prep. with abl., *before* ; *for*, *for the sake of*, *in behalf of* ; *instead of*, *as*.

6. I shall have given your (*referring to more than one*) horsemen food.

LESSON LXXVI

VERBS. FOURTH CONJUGATION. PASSIVE

Present Indicative

SINGULAR

1. au'dior, *I am heard.*
2. audī'ris, -re, *you are heard.*
3. audī'tur, *he, she, or it is heard.*

PLURAL

1. audī'mur, *we are heard.*
2. audī'minī, *you are heard.*
3. audiun'tur, *they are heard.*

Imperfect Indicative

SINGULAR

1. audiē'bar, *I was heard.*
2. audiēbā'ris, -re, *you were heard.*
3. audiēbā'tur, *he, she, or it was heard.*

PLURAL

1. audiēbā'mur, *we were heard.*
2. audiēbā'minī, *you were heard.*
3. audiēban'tur, *they were heard.*

Future Indicative

SINGULAR

1. au'diar, *I shall be heard.*
2. audiē'ris, -re, *you will be heard.*
3. audiē'tur, *he, she, or it will be heard.*

PLURAL

1. audiē'mur, *we shall be heard.*
2. audiē'mini, *you will be heard.*
3. audien'tur, *they will be heard.*

VOCABULARY

agger, aggeris, m., *mound, rampart, embankment.*

impedimentum, -i, n., *hindrance*; pl., impedimenta, -ōrum, *baggage.*

vigilia, -ae, f., *watch, night-watch.*

circumveniō, circumvenire, circumvēni, circumventus (circum and veniō), *surround.*

impediō, impedire, impedivī, impeditus, *hinder, embarrass.*

dēnique, adv., *finally.*

frūstrā, adv., *in vain.*

subitō, adv., *suddenly.*

EXERCISE

Inflect in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive:

- | | | |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. Impediō. | 3. Parō. | 5. Mūniō. |
| 2. Moveō. | 4. Mittō. | |

Translate, analyzing the verb forms:

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Mūniēmur. | 6. Impediēbātur. |
| 2. Circumveniēbantur. | 7. Mūniuntur. |
| 3. Impedior. | 8. Venītis. |
| 4. Audiēris. | 9. Circumvēniēbās. |
| 5. Custōdiēmini. | 10. Impediētis. |

Translate into Latin:

1. We are hindered.
2. You [*sing.*] were guarded.

3. They will be surrounded.
4. I am heard.
5. You [*pl.*] will be fortified.
6. He was hindered.
7. We are coming.
8. I shall fortify.
9. You [*sing.*] run.
10. They do seek.

LESSON LXXVII

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Castra aggere mūniuntur.
2. Tertiā vigiliā ab hostibus circumveniēbāmur.
3. Frūstrā arx oppugnābātur.
4. Dēnique verba Cicerōnis audiuntur.
5. Oppidum subitō circumveniētur.
6. Nulla impedimenta hostium in colle vīsa sunt.
7. Duābus diēbus exercitum vidēbimus.
8. Castra in nostrīs fīnibus pōnuntur.
9. Superbia rēgis māxima fuerat.
10. Summus mōns occupātus est.

Translate into Latin :

1. The enemy's arrival will be hindered by our cavalry.
2. The army is surrounded by marshes.
3. The camp was fortified by a very high rampart.
4. I was listened to with eagerness.

5. Many things are announced to Caesar.
6. The leaders alone will be guarded.
7. At the arrival of your men we shall lead out the troops.
8. Were you [*sing.*] freed from fear?
9. Who has not been praised for valor?
10. The town is fortified by a rather high wall.

LESSON LXXVIII

FOURTH CONJUGATION. PASSIVE PERFECT
SYSTEM

Perfect Indicative

SINGULAR

1. *audi'tus sum, I have been heard, was heard.*
2. *audi'tus es, you have been heard, were heard.*
3. *audi'tus est, he has been heard, was heard.*

PLURAL

1. *audi'ti sumus, we have been heard, were heard.*
2. *audi'ti estis, you have been heard, were heard.*
3. *audi'ti sunt, they have been heard, were heard.*

Pluperfect Indicative

SINGULAR

1. *audi'tus eram, I had been heard.*
2. *audi'tus erās, you had been heard.*
3. *audi'tus erat, he had been heard.*

PLURAL

1. *audi'ti erā'mus, we had been heard.*
2. *audi'ti erā'tis, you had been heard.*
3. *audi'ti erant, they had been heard.*

Future Perfect Indicative**SINGULAR**

1. **audī'tus erō**, *I shall have been heard.*
2. **audī'tus eris**, *you will have been heard.*
3. **audī'tus erit**, *he will have been heard.*

PLURAL

1. **audī'tī e'rimus**, *we shall have been heard.*
2. **audī'tī e'ritis**, *you will have been heard.*
3. **audī'tī erunt**, *they will have been heard.*

VOCABULARY

cōstantia, -ae, f., *firmness, constancy, steadiness.*

galea, -ae, f., *helmet.*

labor, -ōris, m., *labor, toil.*

nōmen, nōminis, n., *name.*

reperiō, **reperire**, **repperī**, **repertus**, *find, discover.*

vīnciō, **vīncire**, **vinxī**, **vīnctus**, *bind, tie, fetter.*

deinde, adv., *then, in the next place.*

hodiē, adv., *to-day.* **ibi**, adv., *there, in that place.*

EXERCISE

Conjugate in all the tenses of the indicative, active and passive :

1. **Reperiō.**

2. **Agō.**

Translate, analyzing the verb forms :

1. **Vincientur.**

6. **Mūnītum est.**

2. **Vīnctī erunt.**

7. **Mūnīta erant.**

3. **Victī erāmus.**

8. **Audītus est.**

4. **Reperiēbāris.**

9. **Custōdīta erit.**

5. **Repertus sum.**

10. **Vīnctus erās.**

Translate into Latin :

1. He will have been bound.
2. I had been guarded.
3. They have been found.
4. We have been surrounded.
5. You [*sing.*] will have been hindered.
6. She had been found.
7. It has been bound.
8. You [*pl.*] had been discovered.
9. I shall have been sent.
10. We had been led out.

LESSON LXXIX

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Rōmae custōdītus eram.
2. Clāmor māgnus ibi audītus est.
3. In castrīs hostium multae galeae repertae sunt.
4. Vēra amīcitia difficillimē reperītur.
5. Māgnus numerus captīvōrum hodiē vīctus erit.
6. Populus Rōmānus ōrātiōne cōsulis permōtus erat.
7. Nōmen iūdicis in librō parvō scrīptum erat.
8. Deinde portus vīsus est.
9. Meus labor inūtilis fuit.
10. Nostrae manūs vīctae erunt.

Translate into Latin :

1. The consul's oration will have been heard by all the citizens.
2. All the roads have been guarded.
3. The war had been waged for two years.
4. Have you [*pl.*] been guarded?
5. We had been hindered on the march.
6. I shall not have been bound by one slave.
7. You [*pl.*] will have been discovered.
8. Who has been praised for his constancy?
9. Will they not be sent to war? Yes.
10. The slaves' hope of liberty had been great.

LESSON LXXX

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

A *demonstrative pronoun* is one which points out a person or thing. Demonstratives are used either substantively or adjectively.

Hic, *this*, the demonstrative pronoun of the first person, refers to something near the speaker.

Iste, *that* (of yours), the demonstrative pronoun of the second person, refers to something near the person spoken to.

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc

PLURAL

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud
<i>Gen.</i>	istius	istius	istius
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	istī	istae	ista
<i>Gen.</i>	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Acc.</i>	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Abl.</i>	istīs	istīs	istīs

EXERCISE

Decline :

1. Iste liber. 2. Haec pāx. 3. Hoc corpus.

Translate into English :

1. Estne iste liber levis?
2. Hī cīvēs fortissimī fuerant.
3. Hīs rēbus bellum minus facile gerēbant.
4. In hōc itinere multōs lacūs vīdimus.
5. Pater huius necātus est.
6. Dē istīs rēbus scrībam.

Translate into Latin :

1. This route through our province is the easiest.
2. I see the danger of these good citizens.
3. Where are those books of yours?
4. Are these your greatest virtues?
5. We announced to this general the enemy's arrival.
6. Will you [*sing.*] carry water out of this forest?

LESSON LXXXI

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS (Continued)

Ille, *that*, the demonstrative pronoun of the third person, refers to something near the person spoken of.

Ipse, *self*, an intensive pronoun, is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun.

Ipse may mean *this very, that very, even*.

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud
<i>Gen.</i>	illius	illius	illius
<i>Dat.</i>	illi	illi	illi
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	illi	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illis	illis	illis
<i>Acc.</i>	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illis	illis	illis

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

EXERCISE

Decline :

1. Ipsa rēgīna. 2. Ille exercitus. 3. Illud flūmen.

Translate into English :

1. Caesar illud oppidum māgnō cum exercitū oppūgnāvit.
2. Illōs iūdicēs in urbe vīderant.
3. Ipsā illā diē Genāvae eram.
4. Ille ōrātor clārissimus erit.
5. Ōlim nōs ipsi multās ferās vīdimus.
6. Illō tempore neuter ager vāstātus erat.

Translate into Latin :

1. On that very night the army stormed the town.
2. Caesar himself led the army to Rome.

3. Did you [*pl.*] see those soldiers at Rome?
4. This is the smallest city.
5. I shall call you [*sing.*] into that cottage.
6. Had you [*sing.*] given that guard money?

LESSON LXXXII

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS (Continued)

Is, ea, id, this, that, is often used as the personal pronoun of the third person. Then **is, ea, id** = *he, she, it*.

Idem, the same, is a compound of **is**.

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	iī, eī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	idem	eadem	idem
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

NOTE.— **m** before **d** is changed to **n**, as **eundem** (**eum** and **dem**).

PLURAL			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	{ <i>iīdem</i> <i>eīdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	{ <i>iīsdem</i> <i>eīsdem</i>	<i>iīsdem</i> <i>eīsdem</i>	<i>iīsdem</i> <i>eīsdem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	{ <i>iīsdem</i> <i>eīsdem</i>	<i>iīsdem</i> <i>eīsdem</i>	<i>iīsdem</i> <i>eīsdem</i>

EXERCISE

Decline :

1. *Is mīles.* 2. *Idem cornū.* 3. *Eadem māter.*

Translate into English :

1. *Eōdem diē castra mōvit.*
2. *Eōs Gallōs proeliō māgnō superāvērant.*
3. *Ad idem oppidum veniēbāmus.*
4. *Eum vīderam.*
5. *Ego et tū in eādem urbe vīvimus.*
6. *Is iter ipsum nōn timet.*

Translate into Latin :

1. This place is more suitable for a camp than that.
2. He had hastened into Gaul with the same army.
3. On that day the very sun did not give light to men.
4. We shall conquer them.
5. Have you [*sing.*] called him to dinner?
6. They were inhabitants of the same province.

LESSON LXXXIII

CAESAR IN GAUL

Caesar bellum in Galliā septem annōs gessit. Primō annō Helvētiōs vīcit, et eōdem annō multī Germānī eī sēsē trādidērunt. Iam multōs annōs Germānī Gallōs vexāverant et ducēs Germānī cōpiās suās trāns Rhēnum saepe trādūxerant. Multa mīlia hominum in Galliam veniēbant.

Prīcipēs Gallōrum lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt, sed Caesar cōpiās suās iam coēgerat et prīmā lūce fortiter cum Germānīs proelium commisit. Caesar ipse ā dextrō cornū aciem dūxit. Tōtum diem ācerrimē pūgnāvērunt, et caedēs exercitūs Germānī māgna erat.

VOCABULARY

Helvētīi, -ōrum, m., *the Helvetians, "a Gallic tribe."*

committō, committere, commisi, commissus (con and mittō), *join together ; commit, intrust. proelium committere, join battle.*

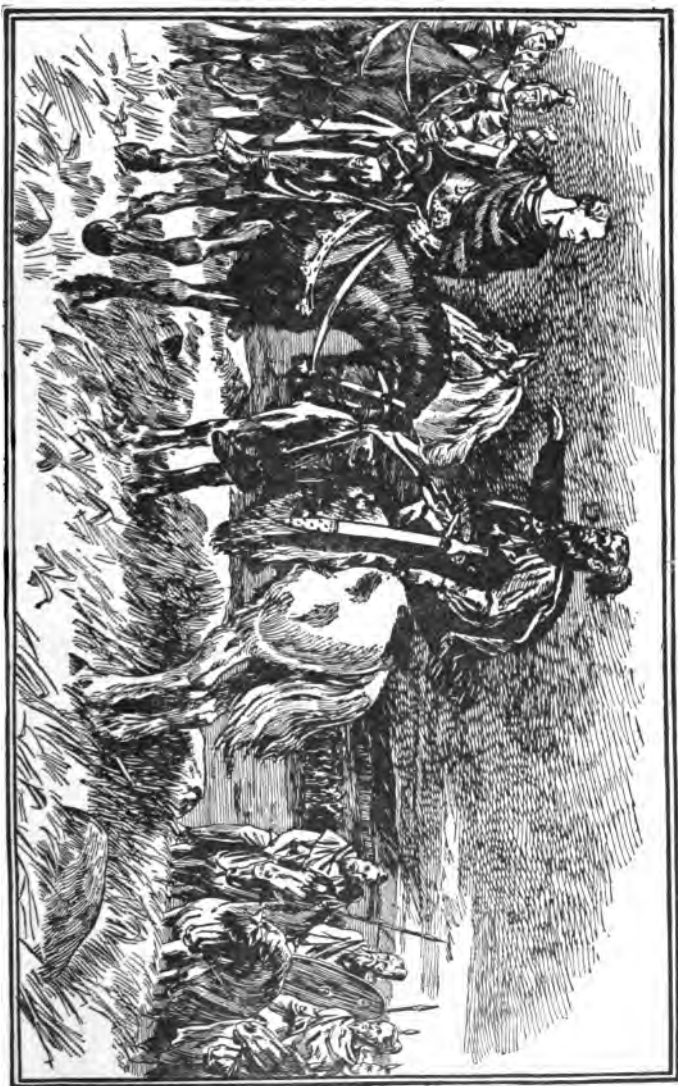
vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trouble, annoy.*

LESSON LXXXIV

THIRD CONJUGATION IN -IŌ. ACTIVE

A few verbs of the third conjugation end in -iō. They have the forms of the fourth conjugation wherever the fourth has i followed by a vowel.

CAMBAK'S INTERVIEW WITH ARIOVISTUS



Principal Parts: Capiō, capere, cēpi, captus, take, capture
Stems: Present, cape-. Perfect, cēp-. Participial, capt-

Present Indicative

SINGULAR

1. ca'piō, *I take, am taking, do take.*
2. ca'pis, *you take, are taking, do take.*
3. ca'pit, *he, she, or it takes, is taking, does take.*

PLURAL

1. ca'pimus, *we take, are taking, do take.*
2. ca'pitis, *you take, are taking, do take.*
3. ca'piunt, *they take, are taking, do take*

Imperfect Indicative

SINGULAR

1. capiē'bam, *I was taking, took, did take.*
2. capiē'bās, *you were taking, etc.*
3. capiē'bat, *he, she, or it was taking, etc.*

PLURAL

1. capiēbā'mus, *we were taking, took, did take.*
2. capiēbā'tis, *you were taking, etc.*
3. capiē'bant, *they were taking, etc.*

Future Indicative

SINGULAR

1. ca'piam, *I shall take.*
2. ca'piēs, *you will take.*
3. ca'piet, *he, she, or it will take.*

PLURAL

1. capiē'mus, *we shall take.*
2. capiē'tis, *you will take.*
3. ca'pient, *they will take.*

Perfect Indicative**SINGULAR**

1. **cē'pī**, *I took, have taken, did take.*
2. **cēpis'tī**, *you took, have taken, did take.*
3. **cē'pit**, *he, she, or it took, has taken, did take.*

PLURAL

1. **cē'pimus**, *we took, have taken, did take.*
2. **cēpis'tis**, *you took, have taken, did take.*
3. **cēpē'runt** or **cēpē're**, *they took, have taken, did take.*

Pluperfect Indicative**SINGULAR**

1. **cē'peram**, *I had taken.*
2. **cē'perās**, *you had taken.*
3. **cē'perat**, *he, she, or it had taken.*

PLURAL

1. **cēperā'mus**, *we had taken.*
2. **cēperā'tis**, *you had taken.*
3. **cē'perant**, *they had taken.*

Future Perfect Indicative**SINGULAR**

1. **cē'perō**, *I shall have taken.*
2. **cē'peris**, *you will have taken.*
3. **cē'perit**, *he, she, or it will have taken.*

PLURAL

1. **cēpe'rimus**, *we shall have taken.*
2. **cēpe'ritis**, *you will have taken.*
3. **cē'perint**, *they will have taken.*

VOCABULARY

cupiō, cupere, cupīvi or cupīi, cupītus, *desire, wish.*

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *make, do. iter facere, march.*

cōficiō, cōficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus (cōn and faciō), *do thoroughly, accomplish.*

interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus (inter and faciō), *kill.*

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, *hurl, throw.*

reiciō, reicere, reiēcī, reiectus (re and iaciō), *throw back, repulse.*

EXERCISE

Inflect in all tenses of the active indicative :

1. Iaciō. 2. Scribō. 3. Veniō.

Translate, analyzing the verb forms :

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. Reiēceraut. | 6. Interficimus. |
| 2. Iaciēbam. | 7. Iēcit. |
| 3. Cōnfēcēritis. | 8. Cōnficiētis. |
| 4. Faciam. | 9. Capit. |
| 5. Cupīvistī. | 10. Fēcērās. |

Translate into Latin :

1. They make.
2. We shall have accomplished.
3. She was wishing.
4. I had thrown back.
5. You [pl.] will hurl.
6. He did kill.
7. You [sing.] take.

8. We had thrown.
9. I have accomplished.
10. They will repulse.

LESSON LXXXV

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Omnēs finem bellī cupimus.
2. Pācem hodiē faciēmus.
3. Ūnum ex filiīs rēgis cēperant.
4. Nōne dē superiōre locō lapidēs iēcistis?
5. Dextrum cornū exercitūs māgnā celeritāte iter faciēbat.
6. Barbarōs interfēcēritis.
7. Opus sine ūllō periculō cōficiam.
8. Tēla facilius reiēcērunt.
9. Hostēs in finīs nostrōs iter fēcērant.
10. Dux tēla capiēbat.

Translate into Latin :

1. The enemy will repulse us in a few hours.
2. The foot-soldiers were hurling their weapons.
3. Many Germans had taken captives.
4. We have killed the monster.
5. Why are you [*pl.*] hurling javelins?
6. Do you [*sing.*] wish our friendship?
7. He will have marched through the other valley.
8. The horseman captured a scout.
9. They killed one of the chief's daughters.
10. We had made many very beautiful things.

LESSON LXXXVI

INTERROGATIVES. GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE
OF DESCRIPTION

An *interrogative pronoun* is one which asks a question.

Quis, who? which? what?

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō

PLURAL

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus

Qui, quae, quod, which? what? is the interrogative adjective.

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō

	PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus

Decline :

1. Quī iūdex?
2. Quae māter?
3. Quod oppidum?

The Genitive of Description

The genitive modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing.

Caesar vir māgnae virtūtis erat.

Caesar was a man of great courage.

The genitive is often used in this construction to express definite measurement.

Circum urbem est mūrus septem pedum.

There is a seven-foot wall (a wall of seven feet) around the city.

The Ablative of Description

The ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing.

Caesar vir māgnā virtūte erat.

Caesar was a man of great courage (a man with great courage).

VOCABULARY

obses, obsidis, m., *hostage*.

potentia, -ae, f., *power*.

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *sail*.

prohibeō, -ēre, prohibuī, prohibitus (prō and habeō), *keep away from, hinder, prevent*.

respondeō, -ēre, respondi, respōnsus, *answer, reply*.

LESSON LXXXVII

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Quis filium ducis vulnerāvit?
2. In quibus spem posuerant?
3. Erat rēx māgnā potentiā.
4. Quī in marī nāvigābant?
5. Exercitus iter trium diērum parābit.
6. Quae oppida oppūgnābimus?
7. Quae puella nōn respondit?
8. Cui obsidēs respondent?
9. Imperātōrem māgnae audāciae reperiētis.
10. Quibuscum sīgniferī habitāverant?

Translate into Latin :

1. Whom did the scout injure?
2. What girl do you [*sing.*] see?
3. We were sailing on a river of great width.
4. What battle had Caesar heard of?
5. Whose daughter will be sent?
6. There was a ten-foot ditch [ditch of ten feet] around the camp.

7. To whom will they announce the victory?
8. What men have not sought peace?
9. By whom were the enemy kept from the march?
10. With whom were you [*pl.*]?

LESSON LXXXVIII

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

A *relative pronoun* is one which connects a subordinate adjective clause with an antecedent.

Qui, quae, quod is the relative pronoun.

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus

Note that the relative pronoun is declined just like the interrogative adjective.

Compare the declension of the relative pronoun with that of the interrogative pronoun.

The following are translations of the relative pronoun:

SINGULAR AND PLURAL

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	who, that	which, what, that
<i>Gen.</i>	of whom, whose	of which, of what, whose
<i>Dat.</i>	to <i>or</i> for whom	to <i>or</i> for which, to <i>or</i> for what
<i>Acc.</i>	whom, that	which, that, what
<i>Abl.</i>	from, by, <i>etc.</i> , whom	from, by, <i>etc.</i> , which <i>or</i> what

A relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by the way in which it is used in its own clause.

Virī, quī urbem dēfenderant, laudātī sunt.

The men, **who** had defended the city, were praised.

Virī, quōrum urbs dēfēnsa erat, laudātī sunt.

The men, **whose** city had been defended, were praised.

Virī, quibus urbs trādita erat, laudātī sunt.

The men, **to whom** the city had been surrendered, were praised.

In these sentences **quī**, **quōrum**, and **quibus** have the gender and number of the antecedent **virī**; but **quī** is a subject nominative; **quōrum** a limiting (possessive) genitive, and **quibus** a dative of indirect object without regard to the case of **virī**.

EXERCISE

Translate into English:

1. Servus, quem amō, est fidus.
2. Cum quattuor legiōnibus, quās sēcum habēbat, in castra properāvit.
3. Iīs, quibus dōna dederam, facile persuāsī.

4. *Ilī sunt virī quōrum armīs victī estis.*
5. *Miles, cui scūtum datum est, ācerimus erat.*
6. *Equitēs, ā quibus castra mūnīta sunt, ad oppidum venient.*

Translate into Latin :

1. He was leading the troops which had assembled from the whole province.
2. We saw the man by whom the general was killed.
3. The men, who were pitching camp, were eager for battle.
4. The road by which you came is very rough.
5. You will favor the men with whom you live.
6. I saw the guard whose friend had been sent out of the city.

LESSON LXXXIX

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. DECLENSION OF *DEUS*

An *indefinite pronoun* is one which points out indefinitely. The indefinite pronouns include **quis**, **quid**, *any*, *any one*, *anything*, and its compounds. The compounds used most frequently are :

1. The substantive forms

<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>
aliquis , <i>some one, something</i>		aliquid
quisque , <i>every one, each one, each thing</i>		quidque
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
quidam	quaedam	quiddam
<i>a certain one, a certain thing</i>		

2. The adjective forms

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
aliqui	aliqua	aliquod, any, some
quisque	quaeque	quodque, each, every
quidam	quaedam	quoddam, a certain

The indefinites **quis** and **qui** never stand first in a clause, and are used chiefly after the conjunctions **sī, nisi, nē, num.**

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis (aliqui)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
<i>Gen.</i>	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	alicui
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	quidam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Gen.</i>	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
<i>Acc.</i>	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Abl.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
<i>Dat.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
<i>Acc.</i>	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

Note that the adjective form, when it is different from the substantive form, is in a parenthesis.

Compare carefully the declensions of the indefinites with those of the interrogative and relative pronouns.

Review carefully the declension of all pronouns.

Declension of **deus**, m., *God*. Base, **de-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	deus	deī, diī, dī
<i>Gen.</i>	deī	deōrum, deum
<i>Dat.</i>	deō	deīs, diīs, dīs
<i>Acc.</i>	deum	deōs
<i>Abl.</i>	deō	deīs, diīs, dīs

The vocative singular of **deus** is like the nominative.

VOCABULARY

arbor, **arboris**, f., *tree*.

domicilium, **domicilī**, n., *abode, dwelling place*.

ōrdō, **ōrdinis**, m., *row, rank*.

accipiō, **accipere**, **accēpī**, **acceptus** (ad and capiō), *receive, accept*.

recipiō, **recipere**, **recēpī**, **receptus** (re and capiō), *take back, receive*. **sē recipere**, *withdraw, retreat*.

anteā, adv., *before, previously*. **numquam**, adv., *never*.

EXERCISE

Decline :

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Quīdam ōrdō. | 5. Illa nūbēs. |
| 2. Aliqua arbor. | 6. Ipsum flūmen. |
| 3. Id domicilium. | 7. Ista soror. |
| 4. Meus cliēns. | 8. Quodque oppidum. |

LESSON XC

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Est in vītā cuiusque hominis aliqua bona fortuna.
2. Quandam arborem māgnam vīdī.
3. Aliquis eum sine ūllō periculō servābit.
4. Dē deīs et deābus multa audīvimus.
5. Quaedam nātiōnēs, quae in Galliā habitābant, itinere exercitum prohibēbant.
6. Quisque praemium accipiet.
7. Ubi est domicilium deōrum?
8. Quīdam mīlitēs numquam sē recēpērunt.
9. Aliquem anteā vīderat.
10. Oppidum quod aedificāvimus dēlēbitur.

Translate into Latin :

1. That row of trees was very long.
2. A certain legion will be sent to Rome.
3. Some friends have come with great speed.
4. What general is not of great firmness?

5. We shall never accept a certain gift.
6. Shall I announce the victory to some one?
7. Each soldier has fought very bravely.
8. Some one saw our dwelling place.
9. These are not the same ships which you [*pl.*] have seen before.
10. Valor always pleases some one.

LESSON XCI

THIRD CONJUGATION IN -IŌ. PASSIVE.
DATIVE OF PURPOSE

Present Indicative

SINGULAR

1. ca'pior, *I am taken.*
2. ca'peris, -re, *you are taken.*
3. ca'pitur, *he, she, or it is taken.*

PLURAL

1. ca'pimur, *we are taken.*
2. capi'minī, *you are taken.*
3. capiun'tur, *they are taken.*

Imperfect Indicative

SINGULAR

1. capiē'bar, *I was taken.*
2. capiēbā'ris, -re, *you were taken.*
3. capiēbā'tur, *he, she, or it was taken.*

PLURAL

1. capiēbā'mur, *we were taken.*
2. capiēbā'minī, *you were taken.*
3. capiēban'tur, *they were taken.*

Future Indicative**SINGULAR**

1. ca'piar, *I shall be taken.*
2. capiē'ris, -re, *you will be taken.*
3. capiē'tur, *he, she, or it will be taken.*

PLURAL

1. capiē'mur, *we shall be taken.*
2. capiē'mini, *you will be taken.*
3. capien'tur, *they will be taken.*

Perfect Indicative**SINGULAR**

1. cap'tus sum, *I have been taken, was taken.*
2. cap'tus es, *you have been taken, were taken.*
3. cap'tus est, *he has been taken, was taken.*

PLURAL

1. cap'ti sumus, *we have been taken, were taken.*
2. cap'ti estis, *you have been taken, were taken.*
3. cap'ti sunt, *they have been taken, were taken.*

Pluperfect Indicative**SINGULAR**

1. cap'tus eram, *I had been taken.*
2. cap'tus erās, *you had been taken.*
3. cap'tus erat, *he had been taken.*

PLURAL

1. cap'ti erā'mus, *we had been taken.*
2. cap'ti erā'tis, *you had been taken.*
3. cap'ti erant, *they had been taken.*

Future Perfect Indicative

SINGULAR

1. *cap'tus erō, I shall have been taken.*
2. *cap'tus eris, you will have been taken.*
3. *cap'tus erit, he will have been taken.*

PLURAL

1. *cap'ti e'rimus, we shall have been taken.*
2. *cap'ti e'ritis, you will have been taken.*
3. *cap'ti erunt, they will have been taken.*

RULE

The purpose or end which something serves or is intended to serve is sometimes expressed by the dative. This dative of purpose is often used where the English idiom would require a predicate nominative. This dative is often used with another dative denoting the person or thing affected.

Centum milites praesidiō urbī reliquērunt.

They left a hundred soldiers as a guard to the city (to serve as a guard).

Audācia vestra semper imperātōrī auxiliō fuit.

Your boldness has always been a help to the general (for a help to the general).

VOCABULARY

civitas, civitātis, f., citizenship ; body of citizens, state.

mors, mortis, -ium, f., death.

regiō, regiōnis, region, district.

suscipiō, suscipere, suscepī, susceptus (sub and capiō), undertake, assume.

sustineō, -ēre, sustinui, sustentus (sub and teneō), *hold up, bear, sustain, withstand.*

reliquus, -a, -um, adj., *remaining, rest of.* As a noun, m. and n. plural, *the rest.*

vēlōx, gen. vēlōcis, adj., *swift.*

EXERCISE

Conjugate in all tenses of the passive indicative :

1. Interficiō. 2. Regō.

Translate, analyzing the verb forms :

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Suscipitur. | 6. Reiēctī sunt. |
| 2. Captī erimus. | 7. Cōfectum erit. |
| 3. Reiciēbāris. | 8. Iacta est. |
| 4. Interfectus erat. | 9. Interfectī eritis. |
| 5. Iacientur. | 10. Suscepta erant. |

LESSON XCII

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Duae legiōnēs equitibus auxiliō missae erant.
2. Negōtium ā cīvibus suscipiētur.
3. Impetum hostium fortiter sustinēbunt.
4. Arma ab omnibus in hāc regiōne capiuntur.
5. Militēs urbī praesidiō fuerint.
6. Equus vēlōcior interfectus est.
7. Mortem rēgis dēsiderāvērunt.
8. Multa tēla ab hostibus iaciēbantur.
9. Metū reiectī erimus.
10. Bella Caesarī cūrae fuērunt.

Translate into Latin :

1. These towns will be taken by us.
2. The remaining state is very large.
3. Very many tasks have been undertaken in a year.
4. This grain will be a great help to the army.
5. Two thousand horsemen had been killed.
6. This very stone was hurled down from the wall.
7. The task will have been accomplished with great care.
8. Food will be a help to me.
9. The worst men are often saved.
10. We had not been repulsed before night.

LESSON XCIII

A ROMAN BATTLE

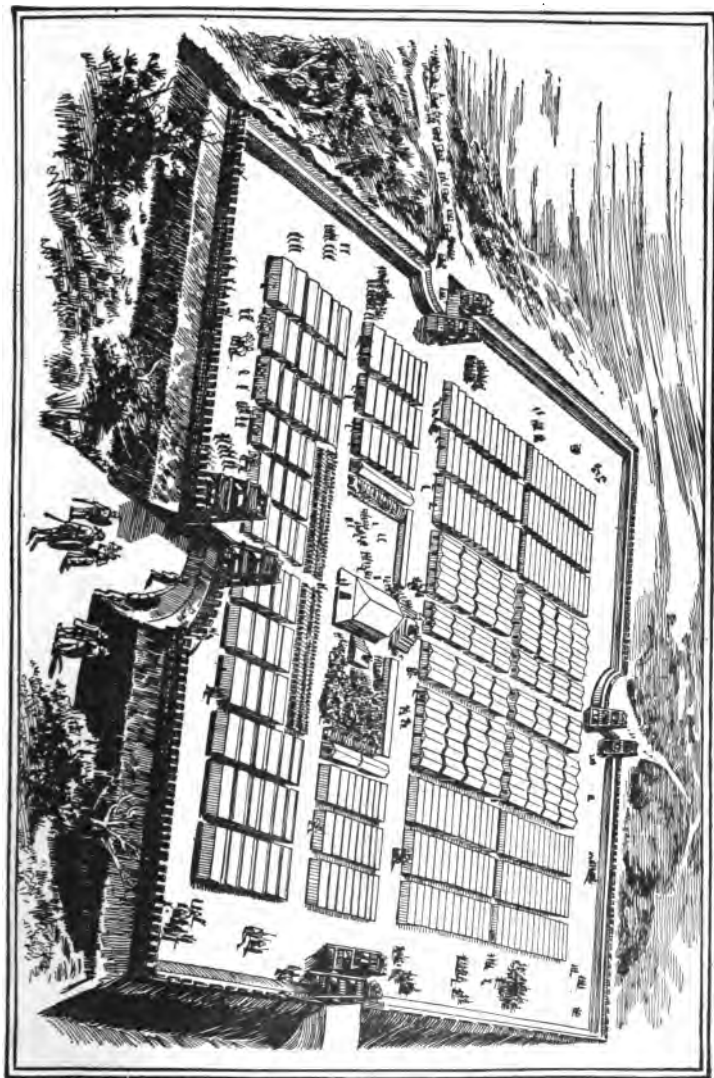
Caesar mediā nocte ex castrīs omnīs cōpiās ēdūcit, et iter ad flūmen facit. Prīmā lūce nostrī¹ cōpiās hostium in summō colle vident. Tum Caesar in dextrō et sinistrō cornū equitēs conlocat² et animōs militum paucīs verbīs incitat. “ Militēs, omnis spēs cīvitātis Rōmānae in virtūte nostrā est; fortibus victōria est.” Hostēs prīmō in sinistrum latus³ exercitūs, deinde in dextrum, postrēmō in mediōs ōrdinēs impetum faciunt. Longum et ācre est

¹ *Nostrī, our men* (used substantively).

² *Conlocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, place, station, arrange.*

³ *Latus, lateris, n., side, flank.*

CASTRUM ROMANUM



proelium, multa sunt vulnera. Māgna corpora et māgnī clāmōrēs hostium nostrōs nōn terrent. Nostri ācerrimē pūgnant et hostīs vincunt. Caesar mīram virtūtem mīlitum laudat et omnibus praemia dat.

LESSON XCIV

VOCABULARY REVIEW

agger	iste	capiō
arbor	is	circumveniō
civitās	meus	committō
cōstantia	noster	cōnficiō
deus	quīdam	conlocō
domicilium	quisque	cupiō
galea	suī	faciō
impedīmentum	suus	iaciō
labor	tuus	impediō
latus	tū	incitō
mors	vester	interficiō
nōmen	alius	nāvigō
obses	alter	prohibeō
ōrdō	neuter	recipiō
potentia	nūllus	reiciō
regiō	reliquus	reperiō
vigilia	sōlus	respondeō
aliquis	tōtus	suscipiō
ego	ūllus	sustineō
hic	ūnus	vexō
idem	uter	vinciō
ille	vēlōx	anteā
ipse	āccipiō	circum

deinde
dēnique
frūstrā
hodiē

ibi
numquam
postrēmō
primō

prō
subitō

Give English derivatives from the following Latin words :

accipiō
alter
arbor
committō
cōstantia

deus
domicilium
impediō
mors
nāvigō

potentia
recipiō
respondeō
sōlus
tōtus

What Latin words are suggested by the following English words?

egotism
neuter
prohibit
sustenance
nomenclature

factory
capture
preparation
adjacent
local

lateral
extremity
convene
numerical
advocate

Review the declensions of nouns and pronouns, the declensions and comparisons of adjectives, the conjugations of verbs, active and passive, and all constructions studied up to this point.

LESSON XCV

PRESENT INFINITIVES. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

The infinitive is a verbal noun. Used as a noun, it has the constructions of a noun. As a verb it can govern a case and be modified by an adverb.

Superāre inimicōs *est grātum hominī.*

To conquer his enemies is pleasing to man.

An infinitive used as a noun is neuter singular. The predicate adjective **grātum** is in the neuter nominative singular to agree with **superāre**, the subject.

A complementary infinitive is one used to complete the meaning of a verb.

Puer mātrem amāre dēbet.

A boy ought to love his mother.

Present Infinitives

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
portā're , to carry.	portā'rī , to be carried.
monē're , to advise.	monē'rī , to be advised.
dū'cere , to lead.	dū'cī , to be led.
ca'pere , to take.	ca'pī , to be taken.
audī're , to hear.	audī'rī , to be heard.
es'se , to be.	

Note that the ending **-re** of the present active infinitive is changed to **-rī** in the present passive infinitive except in the third conjugation, which makes its present passive infinitive by dropping the **-re** and changing its stem vowel **e** to **i**.

VOCABULARY

cōstituō, **cōstituere**, **cōstituī**, **cōstitutus**, *decide, determine, resolve.*

dubitō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *hesitate, doubt.*

incipiō, **incipere**, **incēpī**, **inceptus** (in and **capiō**), *begin, undertake.*

iubeō, **iubēre**, **iussī**, **iussus**, *order, command.*

Write the present infinitives, active and passive, of :

- | | | |
|-----------|-----------|----------------|
| 1. Mūniō. | 3. Agō. | 5. Interficiō. |
| 2. Parō. | 4. Dēleō. | |

LESSON XCVI

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Caesar militēs castra mūnīre iubet.
2. Vidēre est crēdere.
3. Domum venīre cupimus.
4. Cum hostibus proelium committere cōstituērunt.
5. Agrōs vāstāre cupīvistis.
6. Venīre est pūgnāre.
7. Cūr bellum gerere dubitābimus?
8. Virōs dē mūrīs agere studeō.

Translate into Latin :

1. You [*pl.*] ought to hasten into Italy.
2. It is better to give than to receive.
3. The girl wished to carry water from the river to the gates of the city.
4. To run is to be defeated.
5. Why did you [*sing.*] hesitate to march?
6. Do you [*sing.*] desire to come to the city?
7. To be sent is to be killed.
8. We had decided to remain at home.

LESSON XCVII

PERFECT AND FUTURE INFINITIVES.
INDIRECT DISCOURSE

The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem of a verb.

The perfect passive infinitive is formed by combining the participial stem, plus the endings of **bonus, bona, bonum**, with **esse**.

Perfect Infinitives

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
portāvis'se , <i>to have carried.</i>	portā'tus, -a, -um esse , <i>to have been carried.</i>
monuis'se , <i>to have advised.</i>	mon'itus, -a, -um esse , <i>to have been advised.</i>
dūxis'se , <i>to have led.</i>	duc'tus, -a, -um esse , <i>to have been led.</i>
cēpis'se , <i>to have taken.</i>	cap'tus, -a, -um , <i>to have been taken.</i>
audīvis'se , <i>to have heard.</i>	audī'tus, -a, -um esse , <i>to have been heard.</i>
fuisse , <i>to have been.</i>	

The future active infinitive = the participial stem + **-ūr** + endings of **bonus, -a, -um** + **esse**.

The future passive infinitive = the participial stem + **-um** + **īrī**.

Future Infinitives

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
portātū'rus, -a, -um esse , <i>to be about to carry, going to carry.</i>	portā'tum īrī , <i>to be about to be carried, going to be carried.</i>

Future Infinitives

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

monitū'rus, -a, -um esse, to
be about to advise, going to
advise.

mo'nitum irī, to be about to
be advised, going to be ad-
vised.

ductū'rus, -a, -um esse, to be
about to lead, going to lead.

duc'tum irī, to be about to be
led, going to be led.

captū'rus, -a, -um esse, to be
about to take, going to take.

cap'tum irī, to be about to be
taken, going to be taken.

audītū'rus, -a, -um esse, to be
about to hear, going to hear.

audi'tum irī, to be about to be
heard, going to be heard.

futū'rus, -a, -um esse, to be
about to be, going to be.

Write the perfect and future infinitives, active and passive, of :

1. Custōdiō.

3. Iaciō.

5. Mittō.

2. Occupō.

4. Videō.

In English, when a speaker states his own or another's words, he introduces the reported or indirect statement by *that* ; for example, *The boy is at home* ; but, *He says that the boy is at home*. In Latin, in an indirect statement, the word *that* is not expressed and the verb becomes an infinitive ; for instance, **Puer domī est** ; but, **Dicit puerum domī esse**. Notice, too, that the nominative of the first sentence becomes accusative in the second. This accusative is called the subject of the infinitive.

RULE

When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive.

Indirect statement or indirect discourse occurs most

frequently after verbs of *saying, telling, knowing, thinking, and perceiving*.

Tenses of the Infinitive

1. The *present* infinitive denotes the *same* time as that of the principal verb.

2. The *perfect* infinitive denotes time *before* that of the principal verb.

3. The *future* infinitive denotes time *after* that of the principal verb.

1. **Dicit puerōs venīre.**

He says that the boys are coming.

2. **Dicit puerōs vēnisse.**

He says that the boys have come (or came).

3. **Dicit puerōs ventūrōs esse.**

He says that the boys will come.

1. **Dixit puellās mitti.**

He said that the girls were being sent.

2. **Dixit puellās missās esse.**

He said that the girls had been sent.

3. **Dixit puellās missum īrī.**

He said that the girls would be sent.

VOCABULARY

dīcō, dicere, dīxī, dictus, say.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, think, reckon.

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, know.

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, perceive.

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hope. iugum, -ī, n., yoke.

mūnitiō, -ōnis, f., fortification. nunc, adv., now.

nūper, adv., recently, lately, just now.

sub (prep. with acc. after verbs of motion), under, up to.

sub (prep. with abl. to denote place), under, at the foot of.

LESSON XCVIII

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Dicit lēgātōs dē pāce venīre.
2. Scīvērunt cīvīs dē perīculō iam monitōs esse.
3. Spērābam legiōnem ventūram esse.
4. Putāvimus hostīs brevissimō tempore victum irī.
5. Scīvī liberōs domum mittī.
6. Dixērunt exercitum in Galliā mānsisse.
7. Scīmus mīlitēs Rōmānōs sub iugum nūper missōs esse.
8. Audiō mūnitiōnēs urbis nunc dēlēri.

Translate into Latin :

1. They say that the enemy have destroyed the city.
2. They said that the city had been destroyed.
3. We announced that we would give hostages.
4. I know that the leader will be guarded.
5. He thinks that the soldiers are defending the camp with great boldness.
6. He hoped that the horsemen were fighting bravely.
7. The lieutenants replied that the enemy would not make peace.
8. The poet says that valor is better than gold.

LESSON XCIX

ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

A participle is a verbal adjective. Like a verb, it may take an object and be modified by an adverb; like an adjective it agrees with its noun or pronoun in *gender, number, and case*.

The present active participle is formed by adding **-ns** to the present stem of a verb. In **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation, and in the fourth conjugation, **-ēns** is added to the present stem.

The future active participle = the participial stem + **ūr** + the endings of **bonus, -a, -um**.

Active Participles

PRESENT

FUTURE

por'tāns, <i>carrying</i> .	portātū'rus, -a, -um, <i>about to carry, going to carry</i> .
mo'nēns, <i>advising</i> .	monitū'rus, -a, -um, <i>about to advise, going to advise</i> .
dū'cēns, <i>leading</i> .	ductū'rus, -a, -um, <i>about to lead, going to lead</i> .
ca'piēns, <i>taking</i> .	captū'rus, -a, -um, <i>about to take, going to take</i> .
au'diēns, <i>hearing</i> .	audītū'rus, -a, -um, <i>about to hear, going to hear</i> .

The future active participle is declined like **bonus, -a, -um**.

The present active participle is declined like **potēns**.

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	portāns	portāns
<i>Gen.</i>	portantis	portantis
<i>Dat.</i>	portanti	portanti
<i>Acc.</i>	portantem	portāns
<i>Abl.</i>	portanti, -e	portanti, -e

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	portantēs	portantia
<i>Gen.</i>	portantium	portantium
<i>Dat.</i>	portantibus	portantibus
<i>Acc.</i>	portantis, -ēs	portantia
<i>Abl.</i>	portantibus	portantibus

The present participle denotes the *same* time as that of the principal verb.

The future participle denotes time *after* that of the principal verb.

The proper translation of a participle usually requires a clause beginning with some conjunction (*when, since, as, while, after, though, although*), or a relative clause.

Captīvī currentēs captī sunt.

The captives (who were running, when they were running, etc.) running were captured.

Imperātor milītēs laudātūrus hostīs vīdit.

The general (who was about to praise the soldiers, as he was about to praise the soldiers) about to praise the soldiers saw the enemy.

Imperātōrem exercitum ductūrum vīdimus.

We saw the general (who was about to lead the army, as he was about to lead the army) about to lead the army.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Ad imperatōrem auxilium petentēs vērunt.
2. Puellae domum venientēs suōs amīcōs viderunt.
3. Rēx nātiōnem bene regēs laudatur.
4. Resistentis hostis fugavimus.
5. Multitudinem hostium pugnantium interficient.
6. Militēs urbem dēfensūrōs interfecistis.

Translate into Latin :

1. The scouts, [when they were] about to leave, heard shouts of victory.
2. We captured the enemy [while they were] fortifying the camp.
3. [While] living in the city, you [*sing.*] will hear much better orators than these.
4. The general, seeing the soldiers fighting fiercely, felt they would not be defeated.
5. I am giving weapons to my men [who are] about to make an attack.
6. Do you [*pl.*] believe the bad boy [who is] blaming his brother?

LESSON C

THE GERUND

The *gerund* is a verbal noun which may take a direct object. It is formed by the present stem + **-nd** or **-end** + neuter endings of the second declension. The only cases in use are the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative

singular. The nominative is supplied by the present infinitive. The gerund is active in meaning and is equivalent to the English verbal in *-ing*.

RULE

The accusative of the gerund with ad, or the genitive with causā (for the sake of), is used to express purpose.

Causā always follows the genitive.

Nom. portā're { carrying (object of verb).
 { to carry (infinitive).

Gen. portan'dī, of carrying.

Dat. portan'dō, for carrying.

Acc. portan'dum, carrying (object of preposition).

Abl. portan'dō, by carrying.

So monendī, dūcendī, capiendī, audiendī.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Animī mīlitum ad pūgnandum parātī erunt.
2. Pūgnandō vincēmus.
3. Nautae in portum videndī causā properant.
4. Locum idōneum pūgnandō reppererāmus.
5. Audiendī causā vēnit.

Translate into Latin :

1. They had come to hear. (*Express in two ways.*)
2. We are eager for war.
3. I gave the enemy an opportunity of fighting.
4. The scouts found a hill suitable for fortifying.
5. I saw the fortification built by the soldiers.

LESSON CI

PASSIVE PARTICIPLES

The perfect passive participle is formed by adding the endings of **bonus**, **-a**, **-um** to the participial stem.

The future passive participle or gerundive = the present stem + **-nd** or **-end** + endings of **bonus**, **-a**, **-um**.

Passive Participles

PERFECT

FUTURE

portā'tus, **-a**, **-um**, *having been carried, carried.* **portan'dus**, **-a**, **-um**, *to be carried.*

mon'itus, **-a**, **-um**, *having been advised, advised.* **monen'dus**, **-a**, **-um**, *to be advised.*

duc'tus, **-a**, **-um**, *having been led, led.* **ducen'dus**, **-a**, **-um**, *to be led.*

cap'tus, **-a**, **-um**, *having been taken, taken.* **capien'dus**, **-a**, **-um**, *to be taken.*

audi'tus, **-a**, **-um**, *having been heard, heard.* **audien'dus**, **-a**, **-um**, *to be heard.*

The passive participles are declined like **bonus**, **-a**, **-um**.

The perfect participle denotes time *before* that of the principal verb.

Write all the participles, active and passive, of :

- | | | |
|-----------|--------------|-----------|
| 1. Mūniō. | 3. Cōnficiō. | 5. Moveō. |
| 2. Vocō. | 4. Scrībō. | |

The Latin future passive participle, when it approaches the meaning of a verbal noun, is called a *gerundive*. The gerundive is used chiefly in the genitive, accusative, and ablative cases, singular and plural ; rarely in the dative.

RULE

The accusative of the gerundive with ad, or the genitive with causā, is used to express purpose.

Spem faciendae pācis habēmus.

We have hope of making peace (of the peace to be made).

Pācis faciendae causā vēnērunt.

They came to make peace (for the purpose of making peace).

Locum idōneum aciēi instruendae reppererat.

He had found a place suitable for drawing up a line of battle.

Ad ducēs monendōs veniō.

I am coming to advise the leaders (purpose).

Dē oppidīs dēlendīs dīxērunt.

They spoke about destroying the towns (about the towns to be destroyed).

Note that the gerund is a *noun*, the gerundive an *adjective*; that the gerund is *active*, the gerundive *passive*; that the gerund is *singular only*, the gerundive *singular or plural*; that the gerund may *stand alone*; the gerundive is used *only in agreement with a noun*.

VOCABULARY

dēditiō, -ōnis, f., surrender.

facultās, facultātis, f., opportunity.

spatium, spatī, n., room, space, distance, time.

vestigium, vestigī, n., footprint, track; trace.

vōx, vōcis, f., voice.

addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus (ad and dūcō), lead to, influence.

commoveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus (con and moveō), *arouse, alarm.*

dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus (dē and legō), *choose, select.*

induō, induere, induī, indūtus, *put on.*

instruō, instruere, instrūxī, instrūctus (in and struō), *draw up, arrange.*

LESSON CII

EXERCISE

[Translate into English :

1. Facultās galeārum induendārum mīlitibus nōn data erat.

2. Imperātor in hostīs impedītōs impetum faciet.

3. Ē tōtā prōvinciā ad urbem dēfendendam convēnimus.

4. Helvētiī, adventū Caesaris commōtī, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt.

5. Cīvēs rēgis addūcendī causā convēnērunt.

6. Hostēs suās cōpiās ad pūgnandum instrūxerant.

7. Puellae, vestīgia ferae videntēs, virōs vocant.

8. Spatium idōneum auxiliō petendō datum est.

Translate into Latin :

1. She runs as she hears the voice of her mother (hearing the voice of her mother).

2. Ambassadors have already come for the purpose of seeking peace. (Express in two ways.)

3. We shall remain in the place [which was] chosen by the foot-soldiers.

4. I please the boys by telling stories. (Ablative of gerundive.)

5. [Although they are] alarmed by the swiftness of the Romans, they will not send ambassadors to Caesar concerning a surrender.

6. We shall find a valley suitable for pitching camp.

7. An opportunity of fighting was given to the general.

8. The tenth legion is coming to wage war.

LESSON CIII

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. DATIVE OF AGENT

The combination of the future active participle and the forms of *sum* (indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive) is called the *active periphrastic* conjugation. This conjugation expresses action about to occur, or intended.

Present Indicative

SINGULAR

1. *portātū'rus, -a, -um sum, I am about to carry, I am going to carry, I intend to carry.*
2. *portātū'rus, -a, -um es, you are about to carry, etc.*
3. *portātū'rus, -a, -um est, he, she, or it is about to carry, etc.*

PLURAL

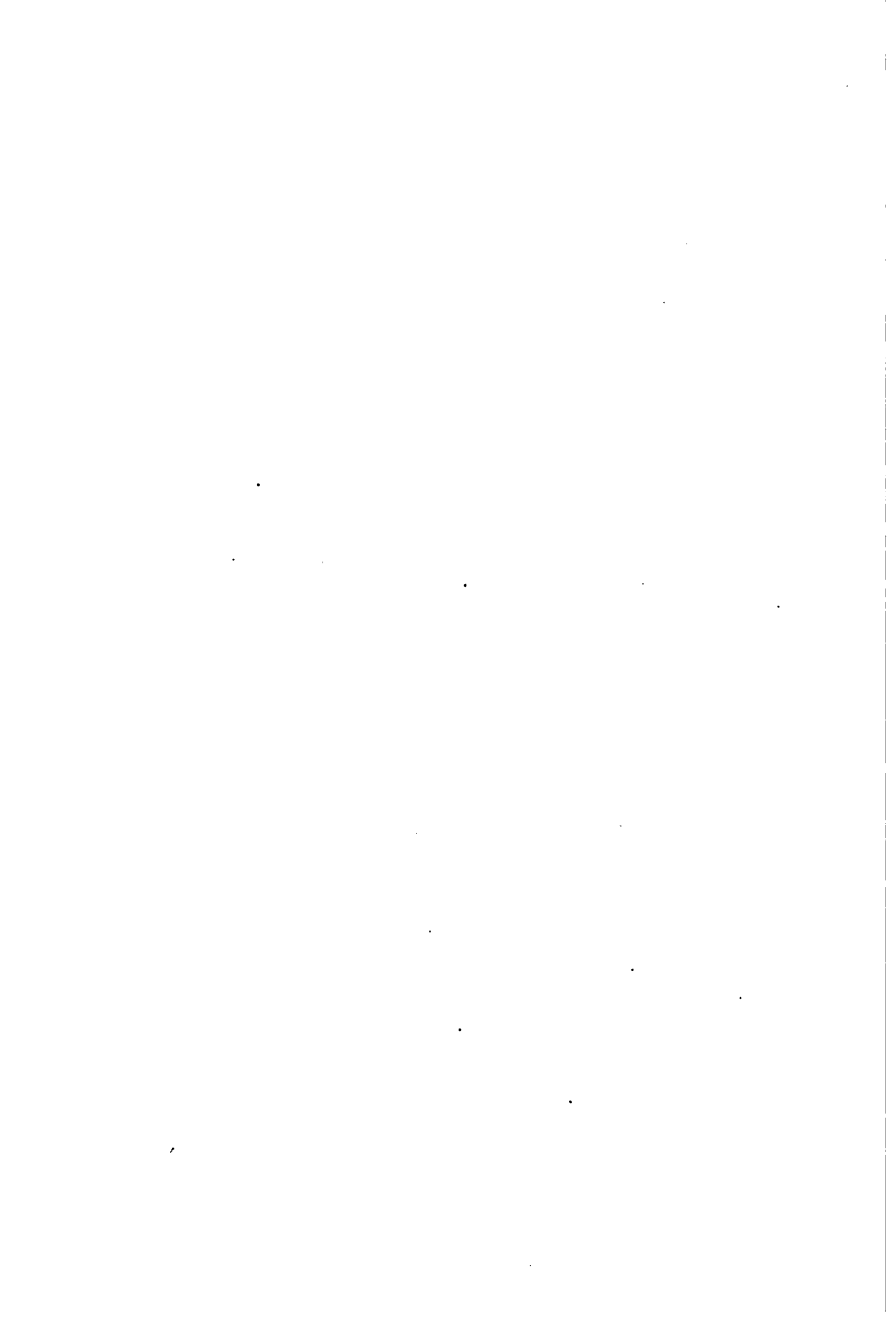
1. *portātū'rī, -ae, -a sumus, we are about to carry, we are going to carry, we intend to carry.*
2. *portātū'rī, -ae, -a estis, you are about to carry, etc.*
3. *portātū'rī, -ae, -a sunt, they are about to carry, etc.*



THE PANTHEON AT ROME



ST. PETER'S AND THE TOMB OF HADRIAN, ROME



Imperfect Indicative**SINGULAR**

1. *monitū'rus, -a, -um eram, I was about to advise, I was going to advise, I intended to advise.*

Future Indicative**SINGULAR**

1. *ductū'rus, -a, -um erō, I shall be about to lead, etc.*

Perfect Indicative**SINGULAR**

1. *captū'rus, -a, -um fui, I have been about to take, etc.*

Pluperfect Indicative**SINGULAR**

1. *audītū'rus, -a, -um fueram, I had been about to hear, etc.*

Future Perfect Indicative**SINGULAR**

1. *missū'rus, -a, -um fuerō, I shall have been about to send, etc.*

The combination of the future *passive* participle or gerundive with the forms of *sum* is called the *passive periphrastic* conjugation. This conjugation expresses action as necessary or that ought to be done.

Present Indicative**SINGULAR**

1. *portan'dus, -a, -um sum, I have to be carried, I must be carried, I am to be carried.*
2. *portan'dus, -a, -um es, you have to be carried, etc.*
3. *portan'dus, -a, -um est, he, she, or it has to be carried, etc.*

PLURAL

1. portan'dī, -ae, -a sumus, *we have to be carried*, etc.
2. portan'dī, -ae, -a estis, *you have to be carried*, etc.
3. portan'dī, -ae, -a sunt, *they have to be carried*, etc.

Imperfect Indicative

SINGULAR

1. monen'dus, -a, -um eram, *I had to be advised*, etc.

Future Indicative

SINGULAR

1. ducen'dus, -a, -um erō, *I shall have to be led*, etc.

Perfect Indicative

SINGULAR

1. capien'dus, -a, -um fui, *I have had to be taken*, etc.

Pluperfect Indicative

SINGULAR

1. audien'dus, -a, -um fueram, *I had had to be heard*, etc.

Future Perfect Indicative

SINGULAR

1. mitten'dus, -a, -um fuerō, *I shall have had to be sent*, etc.

The Dative of Agent

RULE

The dative of agent is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation to denote the agent or doer of the action.

Militibus imperātor monendus est.

The **soldiers** must warn the general.

The general has to be warned, (must be warned, is to be warned) **by the soldiers.**

Mihi exercitus dūcendus erat.

I had to lead the army.

The army had to be (was to be) led **by me.**

VOCABULARY

dēns, dentis, -ium, m., tooth.

fōns, fontis, -ium, m., fountain, spring ; source.

tempestās, tempestātis, f., storm, bad weather.

cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, burn.

incendō, incendere, incendi, incēnsus, set fire to, burn.

obtimeō, -ēre, obtinui, obtentus (ob and teneō), possess, hold, occupy.

pervenio, pervenire, pervēni, perventūrus (per and venio), come through, arrive.

Conjugate through the active and passive periphrastic conjugations in the indicative mood :

Obtimeō.

LESSON CIV

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Ad urbem perventūrī erāmus.
2. Domina rēgīnam vīsūra est.
3. Nōne putās urbem hostium incendendam esse?
4. Propter tempestātēs facultās urbis incendendae datur.

5. Orātōrī placitūrī fuerant.
6. Epistula tibi scribenda erit.
7. Fontem visūrae fuistī.
8. Omnēs equitēs in castra redūcendī erant.

Translate into Latin :

1. The boys were going to choose a leader.
2. The boys must choose a leader to-day.
3. We are about to hear that the animals have been burned.
4. The horse was about to injure the boy with his teeth.
5. We have had to train a very large army.
6. He decided that the captives must be killed.
7. I had intended to give you a better opportunity of seeing the city.
8. All the traders had had to be advised at one time.

LESSON CV

THE SUPINE. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

The *supine* is a verbal noun. It has two case forms, the accusative in **-um** and the ablative in **-ū**.

The supine in **-um** is used with **irī** to form the future passive infinitive, but is more commonly used with verbs of motion to express purpose.

The supine in **-ū** is used principally as an ablative of specification with adjectives meaning *easy, good, strange*, or the opposite.

Acc. portātum, *carrying, to carry.*

Abl. portātū, *in the carrying, to carry.*

So **monitum, monitū** ; **ductum, ductū** ; **captum, captū** ;
audītum, audītū.

Ablative of Specification

RULE

The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate in what respect a statement is true.

Imperātor mīlitēs virtūte superāvit.

The general surpassed the soldiers in courage.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Nullī mīlitēs fortiōrēs animō fuērunt.
2. Hic vir frātrī suō nocēre nōn cupit.
3. Hoc est facile dictū.
4. Prīnceps collem dēlēctum veniet.
5. Urbs dēfendī dīcitur.
6. Quid est optimum factū?

Translate into Latin :

1. This is difficult to see.
2. We had come to seek peace.
3. He was king in name only.
4. The houses are very unlike in size.
5. I came to the city to see my brother.
6. The army on the march had been hindered by the very dense forests.

LESSON CVI

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

A substantive and a participle, a substantive and an adjective, or two substantives may be in the ablative case to express some modification of the idea contained in the principal verb, such as time, condition, cause, concession, etc. This construction is called the *Ablative Absolute*, and is grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence.

The ablative absolute is usually best translated as a clause. The noun or pronoun in the ablative absolute never denotes the same person or thing as the subject or object of the principal verb.

1. **Montibus occupātis, milītēs discessērunt.**

The mountains having been seized (after the mountains had been seized, since they had seized the mountains, etc.), the soldiers left.

2. **Periculō māgnō imperātor milītēs celeriter coēgit.**

The danger being great (since the danger was great, when the danger was great, etc.), the general quickly collected his soldiers.

3. **Caesare duce, urbem oppugnābimus.**

Caesar being leader (if Caesar is leader, since Caesar is leader, with Caesar as leader, etc.), we shall storm the city.

4. **Nūllō prohibente, iter fēcērunt.**

With no one preventing (since no one prevented, etc.), they made the march.

The participle *being*, which is often used in translating the ablative absolute, has no equivalent in Latin, as in

sentences 2 and 3 above. Note that the participle or the adjective in an ablative absolute must agree with the substantive in gender, number, and case.

The tense of the participle in an ablative absolute is either present or perfect. Since only deponent verbs have a perfect active participle in Latin, an active phrase, such as *having fortified the city*, must be changed to the passive form when written in Latin, *the city having been fortified*.

Urbe mūnitā, prīnceps discessit.

Having fortified the city, the chief left.

VOCABULARY

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus, hasten, contend.

discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessūrus (dis and cēdō),

depart from, leave, withdraw, go away.

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, demand.

stō, stāre, stetī, status, stand.

dēfessus, -a, -um, weary, tired, worn out.

incolumis, -e, unharmed.

nōbilis, -e, well known, noble.

EXERCISE

Translate each ablative absolute literally; then form a better English equivalent phrase or clause:

1. Nāvibus vīsīs, in oppidum contendērunt.
2. Caesare imperātōre, Rōma nōn incēnsa est.
3. Hoc oppidum, paucīs dēfendentibus, nōn capiētur.
4. Hostēs, locō superiōre occupātō, itinere nostrum exercitum prohibuērunt.

5. Mīlitibus dēfessīs, dux nōbilis cibum postulāvit.
6. Signō datō, legiō decima impetum fēcit.

Translate into Latin :

1. With Marcus as leader, we shall easily conquer.
2. If an opportunity is given, these men will lay waste the province.
3. I saw the men standing on the bank of the river.
4. The women and children being safe, the men wished to fight.
5. When these things had been announced by the scouts, the general decided to fight.
6. Although the town has been captured, the soldiers will not surrender.

LESSON CVII

REVIEW

Review infinitives, participles, gerunds, supines, periphrastic conjugations, indirect discourse, etc.

Translate, giving special attention to verbals and constructions :

1. Vēnimus vōs monitum.
2. Haec oppida nōbīs oppūgnanda erant.
3. Sentīsne eōs discessūrōs esse?
4. Cūr negōtium suscipere dubitāvistis?
5. Galeae vōbīs cum celeritāte induendae erunt.
6. Venīre est pārēre.
7. Dixērunt Galbam apud eōs rēgem fuisse.

8. Spērāvit sē oppidum captūrum esse.
9. Urbem oppūgnātūrī clāmōrem faciunt.
10. Hostibus impeditīs resistēmus.
11. Facultās itineris faciendī Helvētiīs nōn data erat.
12. Aciēs tribus diēbus instruenda est.
13. Puellae ūnū ex puerīs missūrae erant.
14. Id est facillimum factū.
15. In mūrō standī potestās erit nullī.
16. Duābus legiōnibus prō castrīs relictīs, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē conlocāvit.
17. Dux plūris diēs in hostium fīnibus pūgnāns multōs vicōs incendit.
18. Dīcō meum amīcum Rōmae esse.
19. Explōrātōrēs collem ab hostibus tenērī nūntiant.
20. Nūntius, ā cōnsule missus, quam¹ celerrimē cucurrit.

LESSON CVIII

ROMAN VENGEANCE

Bellum in Hispāniā fuit, quod Hispāniēnsēs, populō Rōmānō inimicī, aliquōs mercātōrēs Rōmānōs interfēcerant. Hōc Rōmae auditō, Rōmānī mīlitēs fortīs cum duce clārō in Hispāniam mīsērunt. Dux cum mīlitibus iter longum dūrumque per montīs altōs et flūmina lāta fēcīt. In Hispāniā mīlitēs Rōmānī oppida hostium māgnō cum studiō oppūg-

¹ Quam, followed by the superlative, *as possible*. Quam fortissimē, *as bravely as possible*.

nāvērunt, agrōs vāstāvērunt, et multōs captīvos Rōmam reportāvērunt. Post hoc bellum Hispāniēnsēs populum Rōmānum timuērunt, et mercātōrēs Rōmānī in Hispāniā semper tūtī erant.

VOCABULARY

Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain*.

Hispāniēnsis, -e, adj., *Spanish* ; as a noun, a *Spaniard*.

quod, conj., *because*.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *safe*.

LESSON CIX

VERBS. IMPERATIVE MOOD, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

The imperative mood in Latin, as in English, is used to express commands. It has the present and future tenses. The forms of the future, which are given in the summary at the end of the book, are used chiefly in laws and maxims. They are seldom found in ordinary writing.

The present tense of the imperative is used only in the second person, singular and plural. In the first and second conjugations the singular in the active voice is the same in form as the *present stem*. The plural is formed by adding -te to the singular. The singular in the passive voice is like the *present active infinitive* (which is one form of the second person singular in the present passive indicative). The plural is like the second person plural in the present passive indicative.

Active

por'tā, carry thou.

mo'nē, advise thou.

portā'te, carry ye.

monē'te, advise ye.

*Passive***portā're**, *be thou carried.***portā'minī**, *be ye carried.***monē're**, *be thou advised.***monē'minī**, *be ye advised.*

VOCABULARY

persevērantia, -ae, f., *perseverance.***socius**, sociī, m., *companion, ally.***adpropinquō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *draw near, approach* (with dative).**rapiō**, **rapere**, **rapuī**, **raptus**, *seize, snatch.***ēripiō**, **ēripere**, **ēripuī**, **ēreptus** (ē and **rapiō**), *snatch from, seize, rescue.*

EXERCISE

Write the present imperative forms, active and passive, of :

1. Amō. 2. Doceō.

Translate into English :

1. Laudāte bonōs, malōs culpāte.
2. Sociīs vestrīs pārēte.
3. Semper labōrā, nam persevērantia omnia vincit.
4. Dea sua arma rapiet et sua tēla iaciet.
5. Īnsulae māgnae nōn adpropinquābit.

Translate into Latin :

1. Children, obey your mothers.
2. Be [ye] taught by the faithful teacher.
3. Announce [thou] these things to your friends.
4. We rescued our friends from danger.
5. Destroy the town, but save the citizens.

LESSON CX

IMPERATIVE MOOD, THIRD
CONJUGATION

In the third conjugation the final *-e-* of the stem is changed to *-i-* in the second plural in the active imperative. Otherwise the imperative forms of the third conjugation are like those of the first and second conjugations.

The verbs *dicō*, *dūcō*, and *faciō* have the irregular forms *dīc*, *dūc*, and *fac* in the singular of the present active imperative. Their other imperative forms are regular.

Active

SINGULAR

dūc, *lead thou.**ca'pe*, *take thou.*

PLURAL

dū'cite, *lead ye.**ca'pite*, *take ye.**Passive*

SINGULAR

dū'cere, *be thou led.**ca'pere*, *be thou taken.*

PLURAL

dūci'minī, *be ye led.**capi'minī*, *be ye taken.*

VOCABULARY

praeda, *-ae*, *f.*, *booty*, *spoil*, *plunder.**rūmor*, *-ōris*, *m.*, *report*, *rumor.**coniciō*, *conicere*, *coniēcī*, *coniectus* (*con* and *iaciō*), *hurl*, *throw.**legō*, *legere*, *lēgī*, *lēctus*, *read.**libenter*, *adv.*, *gladly*, *willingly.*

EXERCISE

Write the imperative forms, active and passive, of :

1. *Mittō.*
2. *Iaciō.*

Translate into English :

1. *Prīmā lūce in hostīs impetum facite.*
2. *Ē locō superiōre tēla conicite.*
3. *Epistulās ad mē saepe scribe, nam tuās epistulās libenter legō.*
4. *Fāma nūntī celeris erat grāta imperātōrī.*
5. *Ad templum properā.*

Translate into Latin :

1. Collect [ye] the booty swiftly.
2. Send [thou] the scout to me.
3. Accomplish [ye] all these things.
4. Be [thou] willingly ruled.
5. Believe me, friend, for I am telling you a true story.

LESSON CXI

IMPERATIVE MOOD, FOURTH CONJUGATION, AND *SUM*

The imperative forms of fourth conjugation verbs are formed like those of first and second conjugation verbs.

		<i>Active</i>	
SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>au'dī, hear thou.</i>		<i>audī'te, hear ye.</i>	
		<i>Passive</i>	
SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>audī're, be thou heard.</i>		<i>audī'mini, be ye heard.</i>	
		<i>Active</i>	
SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>es, be thou.</i>		<i>este, be ye.</i>	

VOCABULARY

supplicium, supplicī, n., punishment, torture. supplicium sūmere dē, inflict punishment on. supplicium dare, suffer punishment.

vāllum, -ī, n., rampart, earthworks.

abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus, hide.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, take up, assume.

paene, adv., almost, nearly.

satis, adv., enough, sufficiently.

statim, adv., immediately, at once.

EXERCISE

Write the imperative forms, active and passive, of :

- | | | |
|-----------|-------------|------------|
| 1. Mūniō. | 3. Videō. | 5. Liberō. |
| 2. Abdō. | 4. Coniciō. | |

Translate into English :

1. Verba ōrātōrum optimōrum audīte.
2. Audāx in bellō es.
3. Ōlim Corinthus erat urbs satis māgna et paene pār Rōmae.
4. Templum māximā dīligentiā custōdī.
5. Dē omnibus hīs obsidibus supplicium gravissimum sūmite.
6. Este amīcī et mūnīminī.

Translate into Latin :

1. Soldiers, fortify the camp with a rampart.
2. They will immediately hide themselves.
3. Be [thou] guarded by the braver men.

4. Be [thou] brave, for victory is the reward of bravery.

5. Hear [ye] this man, for he will teach you many very useful things.

6. Be [ye] brave and assemble at Corinth.

LESSON CXII

SUBJUNCTIVE OF FIRST CONJUGATION VERBS

The indicative mood asserts something as a fact either real or assumed.

The subjunctive mood expresses something as thought of, as a desire or wish, a purpose, a possibility, or some such notion.

The tenses of the subjunctive are *present*, *imperfect*, *perfect*, and *pluperfect*, *active* and *passive*. They have the same time values as the corresponding tenses of the indicative and, in addition, each of them may refer to future time. As the translation of the subjunctive varies with the construction used, no meanings of the tenses will be given in the paradigms.

The present subjunctive of first conjugation verbs is formed by changing the *ā* of the present stem to *ē* and adding the personal endings, active or passive: *portem*; passive, *porter*.

Present

Active

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>por'tem</i>	<i>portē'mus</i>
2. <i>por'tēs</i>	<i>portē'tis</i>
3. <i>por'tet</i>	<i>por'tent</i>

Passive

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. por'ter	portē'mur
2. portē'ris, -re	portē'mini
3. portē'tur	porten'tur

The imperfect subjunctive = the *present stem* + **re** + *personal endings* ; or the *present infinitive* + *personal endings*.

Imperfect*Active*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. portā'rem	portārē'mus
2. portā'rēs	portārē'tis
3. portā'ret	portā'rent

Passive

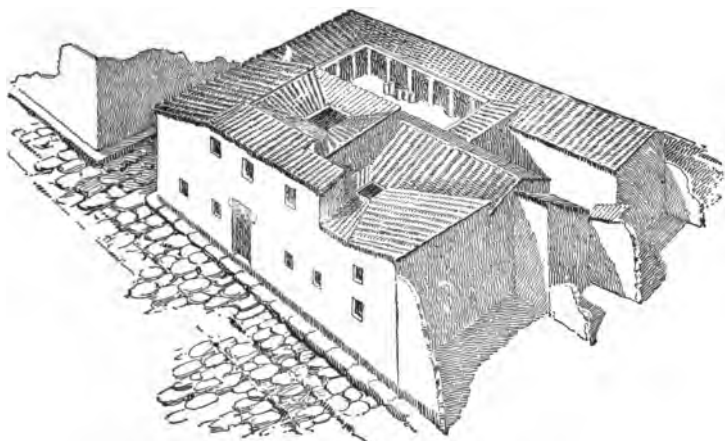
1. portā'rer	portārē'mur
2. portārē'ris, -re	portārē'mini
3. portārē'tur	portāren'tur

The perfect subjunctive active = the *perfect stem* + **eri** + *personal endings*.

The perfect subjunctive passive = the *perfect passive participle* + **sim**, the present subjunctive of **sum**.

Perfect*Active*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. portā'verim	portāve'rimus
2. portā'veris	portāve'ritis
3. portā'verit	portā'verint



HOUSE OF THE VETTI AT POMPEII (RESTORED)



ROMAN COINS SHOWING VARIOUS STYLES OF HAIR-DRESSING

Passive

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. portā'tus sim	portā'ti simus
2. portā'tus sis	portā'ti sitis
3. portā'tus sit	portā'ti sint

Note that the perfect subjunctive active is like the future perfect indicative active, except that the first person singular ends in *-m* instead of in *-ō*.

The pluperfect subjunctive active = the *perfect stem* + *isse* + *personal endings* ; or the *perfect infinitive* + *personal endings*.

The pluperfect subjunctive passive = the *perfect passive participle* + *essem*, the imperfect subjunctive of *sum*.

Pluperfect,*Active*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. portāvis'sem	portāvissē'mus
2. portāvis'sēs	portāvissē'tis
3. portāvis'set	portāvis'sent

Passive

1. portā'tus essem	portā'ti essē'mus
2. portā'tus essēs	portā'ti essē'tis
3. portā'tus esset	portā'ti essent

Review carefully the indicative and imperative moods of first conjugation verbs.

Conjugate through the subjunctive mood, active and passive :

1. Occupō.
2. Superō.

LESSON CXIII

OPTATIVE (WISH) SUBJUNCTIVE

The subjunctive mood with or without **utinam** (adv., *oh that! would that!*) is used to express a wish or a *desire*. The negative is **nē**. **Utinam** is seldom omitted with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive in wishes. This is called the *Optative Subjunctive*.

The present tense expresses what may be; the imperfect what might be, but is not; the pluperfect what might have been, but was not.

Periculum nūntient.

May they announce the danger!

I wish that they would announce the danger.

Utinam periculum nūntiārent.

Would that they were announcing the danger!

I wish that they were announcing the danger.

Utinam periculum nūntiāvissent.

Would that they had announced the danger!

I wish that they had announced the danger.

EXERCISE

Translate into English, giving special attention to the subjunctive forms:

1. **Utinam cum dīligentiā labōrāvissēs.**
2. **Nē obsidēs facile dedissēmus.**
3. **Agri hostium ā vōbīs vāstentur.**
4. **Utinam in marī nāvīgārem.**
5. **Utinam nōbīs hās rēs ante adventum Caesaris nārrāvisset.**

6. Nōs omnēs patriam nostram amēmus.

7. Nē Rōmae habitārētis.

8. Utinam liberī timōre liberātī essent.

Translate into Latin :

1. Would that we were hastening to arms !

2. May you [*pl.*] fight with great eagerness !

3. O that the enemy had been overcome at that time !

4. O that he had not been called into the citadel !

5. May he be praised by his mother !

6. I wish that you [*sing.*] were preparing a good dinner.

7. O that your towns were being seized !

8. Would that I had witnessed the battle !

LESSON CXIV

SUBJUNCTIVE OF SECOND CONJUGATION

The present subjunctive of second conjugation verbs = the *present stem* + *a* + *personal endings*, *active* or *passive*; **moneam** ; passive, **monear**.

The other tenses are formed like those of first conjugation verbs in the subjunctive.

Present

Active

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. mo'neam	moneā'mus
2. mo'neās	moneā'tis
3. mo'neat	mo'neant

Passive

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|-------------------|------------|
| 1. mo'near | moneā'mur |
| 2. moneā'ris, -re | moneā'mini |
| 3. moneā'tur | monean'tur |

*Imperfect**Active*

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. monē'rem | monē'rē'mus |
| 2. monē'rēs | monē'rē'tis |
| 3. monē'ret | monē'rent |

Passive

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------|
| 1. monē'rer | monē'rē'mur |
| 2. monē'rē'ris, -re | monē'rē'mini |
| 3. monē'rē'tur | monē'ren'tur |

*Perfect**Active*

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. monu'erim | monue'rimus |
| 2. monu'eris | monue'ritis |
| 3. monu'erit | monu'erint |

Passive

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. mo'nitus sim | mo'nitī simus |
| 2. mo'nitus sis | mo'nitī sītis |
| 3. mo'nitus sit | mo'nitī sint |

*Pluperfect**Active*

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. monuis'sem | monuissē'mus |
| 2. monuis'sēs | monuissē'tis |
| 3. monuis'set | monuis'sent |

Passive

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. mo'nitus essem	mo'nitī essē'mus
2. mo'nitus essēs	mo'nitī essē'tis
3. mo'nitus esset	mo'nitī essent

Review carefully the indicative and imperative moods of second conjugation verbs.

Conjugate through the subjunctive mood, active and passive :

1. Videō. 2. Laudō.

VOCABULARY

egeō, -ēre, egui, —, *be in need, lack, be without* (with separative ablative).

recūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *refuse*.

sedeō, -ēre, sēdi, sessus, *sit*.

temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *try, tempt, test ; attempt*.

cotidiē, adv., *daily*.

LESSON CXV

HORTATORY OR VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

The subjunctive is used to express something as *willed*. This is called the *Hortatory* or *Volitive Subjunctive*. There are many varieties of this subjunctive. For example, it is used in *exhortations*, *commands*, or *entreaties* in the first and third persons.

The negative used with the Hortatory Subjunctive is *nē*.

The simple subjunctive of exhortation and command takes the present tense.

Examples :

. *Amīcōs moneāmus.*

Let us advise our friends.

Nē cum pīrātīs pūgnent.

Let them not fight with the pirates.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. *Omnēs lēgibus patriae pāreāmus.*
2. *Servī haec omnia in templa portent.*
3. *Nē gladiīs vulnerēmur.*
4. *Urbēs hostium quam celerrimē dēleantur.*
5. *In rīpā flūminis pulcherrimī sedeāmus.*
6. *Imperātor ita dīxit: " Utinam mīlitēs melius exercitī essent."*
7. *Hunc locum relinquere cotīdiē temptāmus quod cibō egēmus.*
8. *Imperātor cum exercitū novō videātur.*

Translate into Latin :

1. Let us keep the enemy from our territories.
2. Let them not refuse to fight for their native land.
3. Let me be taught by a new teacher.
4. Would that I might see you !
5. O that our house had not been burned !
6. Let fortune favor the brave.
7. O that we had not lacked food and grain !
8. Let them not be seen in the harbor.

LESSON CXVI

SUBJUNCTIVE OF THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS

The present subjunctive of third conjugation verbs is formed by changing the **-e-** of the present stem to **a** and adding the personal endings, active or passive: **dūcam**; passive, **dūcar**.

In **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation the **-i-** is retained before the **-a**; or the stem vowel **-e-** is changed to **-i-** before adding **-a** and the personal endings: **capiam**; passive, **capiar**.

The other tenses are inflected like those of first and second conjugation verbs in the subjunctive.

Present

Active

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. dū'cam	dūcā'mus
2. dū'cās	dūcā'tis
3. dū'cat	dū'cant

Passive

1. dū'car	dūcā'mur
2. dūcā'ris, -re	dūcā'minī
3. dūcā'tur	dūcan'tur

Imperfect

Active

1. dū'cerem	dūcerē'mus
2. dū'cerēs	dūcerē'tis
3. dū'ceret	dū'cerent

Passive

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------|
| 1. dū'cerer | dūcerē'mur |
| 2. dūcerē'ris, -re | dūcerē'mini |
| 3. dūcerē'tur | dūceren'tur |

*Perfect**Active*

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 1. dū'xerim | dūxe'rimus |
| 2. dū'xeris | dūxe'ritis |
| 3. dū'xerit | dū'xerint |

Passive

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1. duc'tus sim | duc'tī sīmus |
| 2. duc'tus sīs | duc'tī sītis |
| 3. duc'tus sit | duc'tī sint |

*Pluperfect**Active*

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. dūxis'sem | dūxissē'mus |
| 2. dūxis'sēs | dūxissē'tis |
| 3. dūxis'set | dūxis'sent |

Passive

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. duc'tus essem | duc'tī essē'mus |
| 2. duc'tus essēs | duc'tī essē'tis |
| 3. duc'tus esset | duc'tī essent |

CONJUGATION OF *CAPIO*

Present

Active

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. ca'pīam	capiā'mus
2. ca'pīās	capiā'tis
3. ca'piat	capiant

Passive

1. ca'piar	capiā'mur
2. capiā'ris, -re	capiā'minī
3. capiā'tur	capiantur

Imperfect

Active

1. ca'perem	caperē'mus
2. ca'perēs	caperē'tis
3. ca'peret	ca'perent

Passive

1. ca'perer	caperē'mur
2. caperē'ris, -re	caperē'minī
3. caperē'tur	caperentur

Perfect

Active

1. cē'perim	cēpe'rimus
2. cē'peris	cēpe'ritis
3. cē'perit	cē'perint

Passive

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1. cap'tus sim | cap'ti simus |
| 2. cap'tus sis | cap'ti sitis |
| 3. cap'tus sit | cap'ti sint |

Pluperfect

Active

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. cēpis'sem | cēpissē'mus |
| 2. cēpis'sēs | cēpissē'tis |
| 3. cēpis'set | cēpis'sent |

Passive

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. cap'tus essem | cap'ti essē'mus |
| 2. cap'tus essēs | cap'ti essē'tis |
| 3. cap'tus esset | cap'ti essent |

Review the indicative and imperative moods of third conjugation verbs, active and passive.

Conjugate through the subjunctive mood, active and passive :

1. Mittō. 2. Interficiō. 3. Moveō.

VOCABULARY

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee, run ; avoid, shun.*

quō, adv., *whither ?*

quōmodō, adv., *how, in what manner ?*

quot, indecl. adj., *how many ?*

tot, indecl. adj., *so many.*

LESSON CXVII

DELIBERATIVE (DUBITATIVE) SUBJUNCTIVE

The subjunctive is used in questions implying *doubt* or *indignation*. This is called the *Deliberative* or *Dubitative Subjunctive*.

Examples :

Quō fugiam ?

Whither am I to flee ?

Quō fugerem ?

Whither was I to flee ?

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Quot legiōnēs cōnscribāmus ?
2. Quōmodō hanc urbem sine armīs dēfendāmus ?
3. In proelium exercitum māiōrem dūcat.
4. Utinam lapidēs graviōrēs dē mūrō iactī essent.
5. Quō discēderent ? Quid facerent ?
6. Nē in palūde diūtius stēmus.
7. Dīcunt sē exercitum in finīs hostium nōn duc-tūrōs esse.
8. Locus idōneus pūgnandō repertus erat.

Translate into Latin :

1. May you [*sing.*] inflict severe punishment on this wicked man.
2. Are we to pitch camp in this place ?

3. Let us fill the whole mountain with men.
4. Where was I to enroll so many legions?
5. Would that the noble consul were living!
6. He says that he has already sent forces into Gaul.
7. The sailors had intended to sail into a better harbor.
8. Whither are we to retreat?

LESSON CXVIII

SUBJUNCTIVE OF FOURTH CONJUGATION
VERBS AND OF *SUM*

The present subjunctive of fourth conjugation verbs = the *present stem* + *a* + *personal endings, active or passive*; *audiam*; passive, *audiar*.

The other tenses are inflected like those of the other conjugations in the subjunctive.

Present*Active*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. au'diam	audiā'mus
2. au'diās	audiā'tis
3. au'diat	au'diant

Passive

1. au'diar	audiā'mur
2. audiā'ris, -re	audiā'mini
3. audiā'tur	audian'tur

Imperfect*Active*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. audī'rem	audirē'mus
2. audī'rēs	audirē'tis
3. audī'ret	audī'rent

Passive

1. audī'rer	audirē'mur
2. audirē'ris, -re	audirē'minī
3. audirē'tur	audiren'tur

Perfect*Active*

1. audī'verim	audīve'rimus
2. audī'veris	audīve'ritis
3. audī'verit	audī'verint

Passive

1. audī'tus sim	audī'tī simus
2. audī'tus sis	audī'tī sītis
3. audī'tus sit	audī'tī sint

Pluperfect*Active*

1. audīvis'sem	audīvissē'mus
2. audīvis'sēs	audīvissē'tis
3. audīvis'set	audīvis'sent

Passive

1. audī'tus essem	audī'tī essē'inus
2. audī'tus essēs	audī'tī essē'tis
3. audī'tus esset	audī'tī essent

CONJUGATION OF *SUM*

Present		Imperfect	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>sim</i>	<i>sī'mus</i>	<i>es'seīn</i>	<i>essē'mus</i>
2. <i>sis</i>	<i>sī'tis</i>	<i>es'sēs</i>	<i>essē'tis</i>
3. <i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>	<i>es'set</i>	<i>es'sent</i>

Perfect		Pluperfect	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>fu'erim</i>	<i>fue'rimus</i>	<i>fuis'seīn</i>	<i>fuissē'mus</i>
2. <i>fu'eris</i>	<i>fue'ritis</i>	<i>fuis'sēs</i>	<i>fuissē'tis</i>
3. <i>fu'erit</i>	<i>fu'erint</i>	<i>fuis'set</i>	<i>fuis'sent</i>

Review the indicative and imperative moods of fourth conjugation verbs, active and passive; also the indicative and imperative of *sum*.

Inflect in the subjunctive, active and passive:

1. *Mūniō*. 2. *Coniciō*. 3. *Dēlēō*. 4. *Agō*.

VOCABULARY

condiciō, -ōnis, f., *terms, condition*.

ōrāculum, -ī, n., *oracle*.

sanguis, *sanguinis*, m., *blood*.

iuvō, *iuvāre*, *iūvī*, *iūtus*, *aid*.

praemittō, *praemittere*, *praemīsī*, *praemissus* (*prae* and *mittō*), *send forward, send ahead*.

serviō, *servīre*, *servīvī*, *servītus* (with dative), *serve*.

trādūcō, *trādūcere*, *trādūxī*, *trāductus* (*trāns* and *dūcō*), *lead across*.

postea, adv., *afterwards*.

quoque, adv. and conj., *too, also*.

LESSON CXIX

REVIEW SENTENCES

Translate into English :

1. Omnibus cīvibus bonīs serviāmus.
2. Spērant nōs condiōnēs pācis accēpisse.
3. Helvētiōs frūmentō iūtūrī erāmus.
4. Nē posteā ab hostibus captus esset.
5. Mīlitēs sociīs auxiliō sint.
6. Captīvī nōbīs vinciendī sunt.
7. Mīlitēs verbīs imperātōris adductī, proelium statim committere cōstituērunt.
8. Utinam tū quoque ibi fuissēs.
9. Scīvimus vōs exercitum prīmā lūce flūmen trāductūrōs esse.
10. Ducēs summā audāciā quam celerrimē prae-missī sunt.
11. Nē sanguis ā liberīs videātur.
12. Rēx, māgnō dolōre commōtus, ad deī ōrāculum properāvit et ita dīxit : “ Amīcī meī necantur. Audi verba mea. Dā mihi auxilium.”
13. Explōrātōrēs dīcunt hostīs vicō adpropinquāre.
14. Multitūdinem hostium fugientium interfēcē-runt.
15. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Caesar dēlēctus erat.
16. Quid est optimum dictū?
17. Vēnimus ad videndum.
18. Mīlitēs dēfessōs contrā hostīs ācerrimōs dū-cerem.
19. Incolae urbis salūtem petītum fūgērunt.

LESSON CXX

SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE. THE SEQUENCE
OF TENSES

In English, purpose is often expressed by the infinitive, *He comes to see his friends*. But in Latin prose purpose is expressed not by the infinitive but by the subjunctive, *He comes that he may see his friends*.

Venit ut amīcōs videat.

The subjunctive is used in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action in the principal clause.

A clause of *purpose* is introduced :

1. By **ut**, *that*, *in order that*, if the purpose is positive ; by **nē**, *that not*, *lest*, *in order that not*, if it is negative.

Veniunt ut pācem petant.

They come **that they may ask for peace (in order that they may ask for peace, to ask for peace, in order to ask for peace)**.

Auxilium mittit nē oppidum capiātur.

He sends aid **that the town may not be captured, lest the town be captured, in order that the town may not be captured**.

2. By the relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod**.

Nūntiōs mittimus quī victōriam nūntient.

We send messengers **who are to announce (to announce) the victory**.

Cōpiās cōgō quibus hostīs vincam.

I am collecting troops **with which to conquer (I may conquer) the enemy**.

3. By **quō**, *in order that*, *that*, used when the purpose



RUINS OF THE COLOSSEUM AT ROME



INTERIOR OF THE COLOSSEUM WHEN COMPLETED



clause contains a comparative. *Quō* is the ablative of *quī*, expressing measure or degree of difference.

Urbem mūrīmus quō facilius nōs dēfendāmus.

We are fortifying the city that we may defend ourselves more easily (by which the more easily we may defend ourselves).

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

The three great distinctions of time are *present*, *past*, and *future*. The tenses of present and future action are called *primary* or *principal* tenses. They include the present, future, and future perfect indicative, the present and perfect subjunctive. The tenses of past action are called *secondary* or *historical* tenses. They include the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive.

It is a very common law of language that in a complex sentence the tense in the dependent clause should be of the same kind as the tense in the principal clause.

RULE

Primary or principal tenses in principal clauses are followed by primary or principal tenses in dependent clauses, secondary or historical tenses in principal clauses by secondary or historical tenses in dependent clauses.

1. Primary or principal tenses in principal and dependent clauses:

Veniunt ut pācem petant.

They come that they may ask for (to ask for, etc.) peace.

Venient ut *pācem* petant.

They will come in order that they may ask for (that they may ask for, etc.) peace.

Vēnerint ut *pācem* petant.

They will have come that they may ask for (in order to ask for, etc.) peace.

2. Secondary or historical tenses in principal and dependent clauses :

Veniēbant ut *pācem* peterent.

They were coming that they might ask for (to ask for, etc.) peace.

Vēnērunt ut *pācem* peterent.

They came in order that they might ask for (that they might ask for, etc.) peace.

Vēnerant ut *pācem* peterent.

They had come that they might ask for (in order to ask for, etc.) peace.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Militēs fortiter pūgnābant ut urbs ante noctem caperētur.
2. Locum idōneum dēligēmus ut castra pōnāmus.
3. Fugiam nē interficiar.
4. Ad templum vēnerat quō omnia liberior nār-rāret.
5. In prōvinciam properāvistis ut sociōs dēfenderētis.
6. Exercitum mīserint quī urbem dēleat.

Translate into Latin :

1. We are fighting in order that our country may be freed.
2. They retreated to the mountains to withstand the attack of the enemy.
3. Caesar had sent the cavalry which was to keep the enemy from our camp.
4. Let us fortify the camp that we may seek safety more easily.
5. I shall be well guarded lest I be wounded.
6. You [*sing.*] were not hiding the women that they might be bound.

LESSON CXXI

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE. THE SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER VERBS OF FEARING

Clauses introduced by *ut* or *nē* are often used substantively (as nouns), depending on principal verbs meaning *advise*, *command*, *urge*, *ask*, or *persuade*, where in English we should usually have the infinitive. The mood in such a substantive clause of purpose is the subjunctive.

Eōs monuimus nē id facerent.

We advised them not to do (that they might not do) this.

Petam ut equīs aquam dent.

I shall ask them to give (that they give) the horses water.

The following verbs are used with object clauses of purpose :

hortor, *urge* (deponent verb).

imperō, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātus*, *command* (with the dative of the

person ordered and a subjunctive clause of the thing ordered done).

moneō, *advise, warn.*

petō, *ask for, seek.*

quaerō, **quaerere**, **quaesivī**, **quaesitus**, *ask, seek, inquire.*

rogō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *ask.*

persuādeō, *persuade* (with the same construction as **imperō**).

postulō, *demand.*

NOTE. **Iubeō**, *order*, takes the infinitive as in English.

Iubēmus vōs currere.

We order you to run.

Imperāmus vōbīs ut currātis.

We command you to run (we command that you are to run).

SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER VERBS OF FEARING

If we want a thing to happen and fear that it will not, the purpose clause is introduced by **ut**. If we do not want it to happen and fear that it will, **nē** is used.

Verbs of fearing are followed by a substantive clause of purpose introduced by **ut**, *that not*, or **nē**, *that* or *lest*.

Timet ut maneant.

He fears that they will not remain.

Timēbit nē māserint.

He will fear that they have remained.

Timēbat nē manērent.

He was fearing lest they would remain.

Timuerat ut mānsissent.

He had feared that they had not remained.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Timuērunt ut cōpia frūmentī mitterētur.
2. Peditibus imperābō nē per prōvinciam vestram iter faciant.
3. Ab iīs quaesiverāmus ut discēderent.
4. Imperātor timet nē prīma legiō victa sit.
5. Puerīs persuādē ut domī maneant.
6. Iussistisne mīlitēs in oppidum iter facere?

Translate into Latin :

1. I demand that you leave at once.
2. Who will order the troops to lay waste the enemy's fields?
3. We feared that our (men) were not conquering.
4. The scouts had persuaded us to seek safety.
5. I was fearing lest the boy had lost the other book.
6. Did you [*sing.*] ask the chief not to inflict punishment upon the captives?

LESSON CXXII

SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT

In the sentence "The soldiers fight bravely that they may be praised," the subordinate clause, as we know, expresses *purpose*, the will of the soldiers; but if we say, "The soldiers fight so bravely that they are praised," the clause expresses a fact resulting from the principal action and is called a clause of *result*.

Result is expressed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut**, *so that*, or **ut nōn**, *so that not*.

Object clauses of result with **ut** or **ut nōn** are found after verbs of *accomplishing*, *causing*, or *bringing about*.

The main clause upon which a clause of result depends often contains **tālis**, *such*, **tantus**, *so great*, **sic**, *so*, *in such a manner*, **ita**, *so (manner)*, **tam**, *so (degree)*, or some word of similar meaning.

The rule of sequence of tenses must be followed.

Examples :

Militēs tam fortiter pūgnant ut laudentur.

The soldiers fight **so** bravely that they are praised.

Virtūs ducis tanta erat ut nōn vincerētur.

The leader's courage was **so great** that he was not conquered.

Dux effēcit ut esset spēs victōriae.

The leader brought it about that there was (caused that there was) hope of victory.

Note that the verb in a result clause is indicative in English, but subjunctive in Latin.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Ita vivit ut omnibus cārus sit.
2. Talem ducem habēbitis ut timēre nōn dēbeātis.
3. Pīrātae nōn tam barbarī erant ut haec nōn scīrent.
4. Hostēs ita territī sunt ut in silvās dēnsās fugerent.
5. Servī pūgnant nē ā dominīs culpentur.

6. *Prīncipēs effēcērunt ut omnēs cīvitatēs obsidēs darent.*

Translate into Latin :

1. The mountain was so high that we saw the ships on the lake.

2. The towns are so fortified that the citizens are safe.

3. The place had been so fortified by nature that it afforded (gave) a good opportunity to wage war.

4. You [*pl.*] will be so brave that you will not be conquered.

5. We are bringing it about that all will retreat.

6. Come quickly to save us.

LESSON CXXIII

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS

An indirect question is a question which is quoted with changed form. Indirect questions depend upon verbs of *knowing, asking, perceiving*, and the like, and are subordinate clauses introduced by interrogative words. The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.

The rule for sequence of tenses must be followed.

Examples :

Cūr currit? (Direct question)

Why does he run?

Scīmus cūr currat. (Indirect question)

We know **why** he runs.

Cūr currēbat?

Why was he running?

Scīvimus cūr curreret.

We knew **why** he was running.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Quaerō quis hic iūdex sit.
 2. Audīverāmus quae longitūdō flūminis esset.
 3. Quaesīvit cui liber datus esset.
 4. Dīc nōbīs cūr paulō fortius nōn pūgnāveris.
 5. Nostrōs liberōs dīligenter doceāmus.
 6. Quōmodō hanc arcem sine mīlitibus dēfendant?
 7. Veniet ut legiōnem novam cōnscribat.
 8. Audīvistīne quot equitēs certō tempore vēnis-
- sent?

Translate into Latin :

1. Caesar asks the captives what the number of the enemy is.
2. They did not know why the enemy had broken camp.
3. Do you [*sing.*] know by whom the Gauls were conquered?
4. We ran so swiftly that we reached the mountain before noon of that day.
5. Would that you [*pl.*] had finished that task!
6. I had asked what you [*pl.*] were furnishing.
7. Neither of the two boys came to read the book.
8. I shall hear where you [*sing.*] have been.

LESSON CXXIV

A LEADER'S ADDRESS TO HIS MEN

Ōlim fortissimus dux suōs convocāvit ut animōs eōrum cōfirmāret et iīs persuādēret nē hostīs timērent. Animōs eōrum ita cōfirmāvit. "Vōs, quī in hīs fīnībus vīvitis, in hunc locum convocāvī quod mēcum istōs agrōs et istās domōs ab hostibus liberāre dēbētis. Hoc nōbīs nōn erit difficile, quod hostēs iam infirmī inōpiā cibī ferās, quārum vestīgia vident, timent. Silvās dēnsissimās et montēs altōs quoque timent. Este fortēs et deī ipsī nōbīs viam salūtis dēmōnstrābunt. Nē istī oculī calamitātem nostram videant. Ad arma vōs vocō ut nōmen hostium dēleātis. Mihi pārēte. Exercēte istam virtūtem et vincētis."

LESSON CXXV

VOCABULARY REVIEW

condiciō

dēditio

dēns

facultās

fōns

iugum

mūnitiō

ōrāculum

persevērantia

potestās

praeda

rūmor

sanguis

socius

spatium

supplicium

tempestās

vāllum

vestigium

vōx

abdō

adducō

adpropinquō

commoveō

coniciō

cōstituō

contendō

convocō

cremō

dēligō

dicō	quaerō	tūtus
discēdō	rapiō	cotidiē
dubitō	recūsō	ita
efficiō	rogō	libenter
egeō	sciō	nunc
ēripiō	sedeō	nūper
fugiō	sentiō	paene
imperō	serviō	postea
incendō	spērō	quō
incipiō	stō	quōmodō
induō	sūmō	quoque
instruō	temptō	satis
iubeō	trādūcō	sic
iuvō	dēfessus	statim
legō	incolumis	tam
obtineō	nōbilis	nē
perveniō	quot	ut
postulō	tālis	utinam
praemittō	tantus	
putō	tot	

What Latin words are suggested by the following English words?

dentist	imperative	peninsula
sediment	society	satisfy
legible	dictator	station
cremate	contention	science
sanguinary	incendiary	interrogative
commotion	sentiment	question

Give other English words from the Latin words suggested.

LESSON CXXVI

IRREGULAR VERBS. POSSUM AND OTHER
COMPOUNDS OF SUM

The verb **possum** is a compound of the verb **sum** and the adjective **potis**, *able*. Principal parts: **possum**, **posse**, **potui**, —.

Possum = **pot** + **sum**; the **t** becomes **s** before those forms of the verb **sum** which begin with **s**.

Possum requires a complementary infinitive to complete its meaning.

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| 1. pos'sum , <i>I am able, can.</i> | pos'sumus , <i>we are able, can.</i> |
| 2. po'tes , <i>you are able, can.</i> | potes'tis , <i>you are able, can.</i> |
| 3. po'test , <i>he, she, or it is able, can.</i> | pos'sunt , <i>they are able, can.</i> |

Imperfect

I was able, I could, etc.

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. po'teram | poterā'mus |
| 2. po'terās | poterā'tis |
| 3. po'terat | po'terant |

Future

I shall be able, etc.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. po'terō | pote'rimus |
| 2. po'teris | pote'ritis |
| 3. po'terit | po'terunt |

Perfect*I have been or was able, I could, etc.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. po'tuī	potu'imus
2. potuis'tī	potuis'tis
3. po'tuit	potuē'runt, potuē're

Pluperfect*I had been able, etc.*

1. potu'eram	potuerā'mus
2. potu'erās	potuerā'tis
3. potu'erat	potu'erant

Future Perfect*I shall have been able, etc.*

1. potu'erō	potue'rimus
2. potu'eris	potue'ritis
3. potu'erit	potu'erint

SUBJUNCTIVE**Present**

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. pos'sim	possī'mus
2. pos'sīs	possī'tis
3. pos'sit	pos'sint

Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
potu'erim	potue'rimus
potu'eris	potue'ritis
potu'erit	potu'erint

Imperfect

1. pos'sem	possē'mus
2. pos'sēs	possē'tis
3. pos'set	pos'sent

Pluperfect

potuis'sem	potuissē'mus
potuis'sēs	potuissē'tis
potuis'set	potuis'sent

INFINITIVES

Present **posse**Perfect **potuisse**

PARTICIPLE

Present **potēns**, gen. **potentis** (adjective), *powerful*.

Other compounds of **sum** are inflected like the simple verb, except **prōsum**, *benefit*, in which the form **prōd** appears before an initial **e** of the simple verb; as **prōdesse**, *to benefit, to be useful*; **prōderam**, *I was useful*. **Prōsum** governs the dative case.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Caesar iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare nōn potuit.
2. Locum idōneum aciēi reperīre poteris.
3. Vōbīs facultātem pācis petendae dare poterāmus.
4. Pūgnāvērunt ut liberī esse possent.
5. Mīlitēs, quōs dūcis, montem occupāre possunt.
6. Hostēs in urbem tam celeriter veniunt ut frūmentum servārī nōn possit.

Translate into Latin :

1. Our men were not able to choose a place suitable for fighting.
2. We so fortified the town that it could not be taken by the enemy.
3. Who will be able to see the king?
4. You [*pl.*] are coming to frighten the birds on the tower.

5. Some had been able to hide, others to flee.
 6. I shall come that I may be able to teach those boys.

LESSON CXXVII

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)

Conjugation of *volō*, *wish*, *will*, *be willing*Principal parts : *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*, —

INDICATIVE

Present

I wish, I am willing, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>vo'lō</i>	<i>vo'lumus</i>
2. <i>vīs</i>	<i>vul'tis</i>
3. <i>vult</i>	<i>vo'lunt</i>

Perfect

I wished, have wished, have been willing, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>vo'lui</i>	<i>volu'imus</i>	<i>vo'lui</i>	<i>volu'imus</i>
2. <i>voluis'ti</i>	<i>voluis'tis</i>	<i>voluis'ti</i>	<i>voluis'tis</i>
3. <i>vo'luit</i>	<i>voluē'runt</i> or <i>voluē're</i>	<i>vo'luit</i>	<i>voluē'runt</i> or <i>voluē're</i>

Imperfect

I was wishing, etc.

1. <i>volē'bam</i>	<i>volēbā'mus</i>
2. <i>volē'bās</i>	<i>volēbā'tis</i>
3. <i>volē'bat</i>	<i>volē'bant</i>

Pluperfect

I had wished, etc.

1. <i>volu'eram</i>	<i>voluerā'mus</i>
2. <i>volu'erās</i>	<i>voluerā'tis</i>
3. <i>volu'erat</i>	<i>volu'erant</i>

Future

I shall wish, etc.

1. <i>vo'lam</i>	<i>volē'mus</i>
2. <i>vo'lēs</i>	<i>volē'tis</i>
3. <i>vo'let</i>	<i>vo'lent</i>

Future Perfect

I shall have wished, etc.

1. <i>volu'erō</i>	<i>value'rimus</i>
2. <i>volu'eris</i>	<i>value'ritis</i>
3. <i>volu'erit</i>	<i>volu'erint</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present		Perfect	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>ve'lim</i>	<i>veli'mus</i>	<i>volu'erim</i>	<i>volue'rimus</i>
2. <i>ve'lis</i>	<i>veli'tis</i>	<i>volu'eris</i>	<i>volue'ritis</i>
3. <i>ve'lit</i>	<i>ve'lint</i>	<i>volu'erit</i>	<i>volu'erint</i>

Imperfect		Pluperfect	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>vel'lem</i>	<i>vellē'mus</i>	<i>voluis'sem</i>	<i>voluissē'mus</i>
2. <i>vel'lēs</i>	<i>vellē'tis</i>	<i>voluis'sēs</i>	<i>voluissē'tis</i>
3. <i>vel'let</i>	<i>vel'lent</i>	<i>voluis'set</i>	<i>voluis'sent</i>

INFINITIVES

Present	<i>velle</i>	Perfect	<i>voluisse</i>
---------	--------------	---------	-----------------

PARTICIPLE

Present	<i>volēns, volentis</i>
---------	-------------------------

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. *Vir miser librum scribere voluit.*
2. *Nōne Rōmae manēre vultis?*
3. *Hunc montem ā militibus occupārī voluerāmus.*
4. *Utinam diūtius et ācrius pūgnāre voluissētis.*
5. *Militibus cibum et arma praebebimus ut in finis hostium iter facere velint.*
6. *Dixit sē exercitum dūcere velle.*

Translate into Latin :

1. They did not wish to lack food and water.
2. I think that you can easily resist the foot-soldier.
3. Would that some one were willing to free us from danger !
4. He gave me beautiful gifts that I might be willing to work more diligently.
5. The general had wished to finish the war before the winter.
6. We know why you [*sing.*] wished to be a leader of great courage.

LESSON CXXVIII

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)

Conjugation of **nōlō** [**nē** (*not*) + **volō**], *be unwilling*

Principal parts : **nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, —

INDICATIVE

Present		Perfect	
<i>I am unwilling, etc.</i>		<i>I have been unwilling, was unwilling, etc.</i>	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. nō'lō	nō'lumus	nō'luī	nōlu'imus
2. nōn vīs	nōn vul'tis	nōluis'tī	nōluis'tis
3. nōn vult	nō'lunt	nō'luit	nōluē'runt or -ē're

Imperfect

I was unwilling, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>nŏlē'bam</i>	<i>nŏlēbā'mus</i>
2. <i>nŏlē'bās</i>	<i>nŏlēbā'tis</i>
3. <i>nŏlē'bat</i>	<i>nŏlē'bant</i>

Pluperfect

I had been unwilling, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>nŏlu'eram</i>	<i>nŏluerā'mus</i>
<i>nŏlu'erās</i>	<i>nŏluerā'tis</i>
<i>nŏlu'erat</i>	<i>nŏlu'erant</i>

Future

I shall be unwilling, etc. I shall have been unwilling, etc.

1. <i>nŏ'lam</i>	<i>nŏlē'mus</i>	<i>nŏlu'erō</i>	<i>nŏlue'rimus</i>
2. <i>nŏ'lēs</i>	<i>nŏlē'tis</i>	<i>nŏlu'eris</i>	<i>nŏlue'ritis</i>
3. <i>nŏ'let</i>	<i>nŏ'lent</i>	<i>nŏlu'erit</i>	<i>nŏlu'erint</i>

Future Perfect

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>nŏ'lim</i>	<i>nŏlī'mus</i>
2. <i>nŏ'līs</i>	<i>nŏlī'tis</i>
3. <i>nŏ'lit</i>	<i>nŏ'lint</i>

Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>nŏlu'erim</i>	<i>nŏlue'rimus</i>
<i>nŏlu'eris</i>	<i>nŏlue'ritis</i>
<i>nŏlu'erit</i>	<i>nŏlu'erint</i>

Imperfect

1. <i>nŏl'lem</i>	<i>nŏllē'mus</i>
2. <i>nŏl'lēs</i>	<i>nŏllē'tis</i>
3. <i>nŏl'let</i>	<i>nŏl'lent</i>

Pluperfect

<i>nŏluis'sem</i>	<i>nŏluis'sē'mus</i>
<i>nŏluis'sēs</i>	<i>nŏluis'sē'tis</i>
<i>nŏluis'set</i>	<i>nŏluis'sent</i>

IMPERATIVE

Present *nŏ'li*¹ (sing.)

*nŏlī'te*¹ (pl.)

¹ *Nŏli* and *nŏlite* are used with the present infinitive to express a negative command (prohibition).

Nŏli discēdere.

Do not leave.

Nŏlite pūgnāre.

Do not fight.

INFINITIVES

Present **nōlle** Perfect **nōluisse**

PARTICIPLE

Present **nōlēns, nōlentis**

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Cōsulēs cīvem Rōmānum interficere nōluērunt.
2. Virō malō vēra dīcentī crēdere nōlō.
3. In flūmen dēsīlīre nōluit.
4. Ā virīs vulnerātīs discēdere nōlīte.
5. Utinam cīvibus bonīs nocēre nōluissēs.
6. Sciō tē malīs favēre nōluisse.

Translate into Latin :

1. Caesar was unwilling to lead his men out of camp.
2. They say that they are unwilling to do this.
3. We asked why he had been unwilling to undertake the business.
4. The scouts will be unwilling to attempt this long journey.
5. Why are you [*sing.*] unwilling to remain at Geneva three days?
6. Let us be unwilling to wage war with the Romans.

LESSON CXXIX

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)

Conjugation of *mālō* [*mā* (from *magis*, *more*) + *volō*], *prefer*, *be more willing*

Principal parts : *mālō*, *mälle*, *māluī*, —

INDICATIVE

Present

I prefer, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>mā'lō</i>	<i>mā'lumus</i>
2. <i>mā'vis</i>	<i>māvul'tis</i>
3. <i>mā'vult</i>	<i>mā'lunt</i>

Perfect

I have preferred, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>mā'luī</i>	<i>mālu'imus</i>
<i>māluis'tī</i>	<i>māluis'tis</i>
<i>mā'luit</i>	<i>māluē'runt</i> or <i>-ē're</i>

Imperfect

I was preferring, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>mālē'bam</i>	<i>mālēbā'mus</i>
2. <i>mālē'bās</i>	<i>mālēbā'tis</i>
3. <i>mālē'bat</i>	<i>mālē'bant</i>

Pluperfect

I had preferred, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>mālu'eram</i>	<i>māluērā'mus</i>
<i>mālu'erās</i>	<i>māluērā'tis</i>
<i>mālu'erat</i>	<i>mālu'erant</i>

Future

I shall prefer, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>mā'lam</i>	<i>mālē'mus</i>
2. <i>mā'lēs</i>	<i>mālē'tis</i>
3. <i>mā'let</i>	<i>mā'lent</i>

Future Perfect

I shall have preferred, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>mālu'erō</i>	<i>māluē'rimus</i>
<i>mālu'eris</i>	<i>māluē'ritis</i>
<i>mālu'erit</i>	<i>mālu'erint</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present		Perfect	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. mā'lim	māli'mus	mālu'erim	mālu'e'rimus
2. mā'lis	māli'tis	mālu'eris	mālu'e'ritis
3. mā'lit	mā'lint	mālu'erit	mālu'erint
Imperfect		Pluperfect	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. māl'lem	māllē'mus	māluis'sem	māluissē'mus
2. māl'lēs	māllē'tis	māluis'sēs	māluissē'tis
3. māl'let	māl'lent	māluis'set	māluis'sent

INFINITIVES

Present mālle Perfect māluisse

No Participles

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Militēs pigrī in castrīs manēre mālunt.
2. Cicerō esse bonus māluit.
3. Hoc mālēmus quod facilius est.
4. Virtūtem māluerās.
5. Audīvī cūr rūrī vīvere māllent.
6. Arbor quam mālō in illō ōrdine est.

Translate into Latin :

1. She prefers to do this work alone.
2. We preferred to pitch the camp on the hill.
3. In summer some prefer the sea, others the mountains.

4. I prefer to do this that we may be friends.
5. Would that all men were more willing to obey these laws!
6. Let us prefer to be useful to our king.

LESSON CXXX

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)

Active voice of *ferō*, *bear*, *carry*

Principal parts : *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*

INDICATIVE

Present

I bear, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>fe'rō</i>	<i>fe'rimus</i>
2. <i>fers</i>	<i>fer'tis</i>
3. <i>fert</i>	<i>fe'runt</i>

Perfect

I have borne, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>tu'li</i>	<i>tu'limus</i>
<i>tulis'ti</i>	<i>tulis'tis</i>
<i>tu'lit</i>	<i>tulē'runt</i> or <i>-ē're</i>

Imperfect

I was bearing, etc.

1. <i>ferē'bam</i>	<i>ferēbā'mus</i>
2. <i>ferē'bās</i>	<i>ferēbā'tis</i>
3. <i>ferē'bat</i>	<i>ferē'bant</i>

Pluperfect

I had borne, etc.

<i>tu'leram</i>	<i>tulerā'mus</i>
<i>tu'lerās</i>	<i>tulerā'tis</i>
<i>tu'lerat</i>	<i>tu'lerant</i>

Future

I shall bear, etc.

1. <i>fe'ram</i>	<i>ferē'mus</i>
2. <i>fe'rēs</i>	<i>ferē'tis</i>
3. <i>fe'ret</i>	<i>fe'rent</i>

Future Perfect

I shall have borne, etc.

<i>tu'lerō</i>	<i>tulē'rimus</i>
<i>tu'leris</i>	<i>tulē'ritis</i>
<i>tu'lerit</i>	<i>tu'lerint</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present		Perfect	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. fe'ram	ferā'mus	tu'lerim	tule'rimus
2. fe'rās	ferā'tis	tu'leris	tule'ritis
3. fe'rat	fe'rant	tu'lerit	tu'lerint
Imperfect		Pluperfect	
1. fer'rem	ferrē'mus	tulis'sem	tulissē'mus
2. fer'rēs	ferrē'tis	tulis'sēs	tulissē'tis
3. fer'ret	fer'rent	tulis'set	tulis'sent

IMPERATIVE

Present	fer (sing.)	forte (pl.)
---------	-------------	-------------

INFINITIVES

Pres. ferre	Perf. tulisse	Fut. lātūrus, -a, -um esse
-------------	---------------	----------------------------

PARTICIPLES

Present	ferēns, ferentis	Future lātūrus, -a, -um
---------	------------------	-------------------------

GERUND

SUPINE

Gen.	ferendī	
Dat.	ferendō	Acc. lātum
Acc.	ferendum	Abl. lātū
Abl.	ferendō	

VOCABULARY

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, *learn* ; in the perfect tenses, *know* (in the sense of recognize).

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus (con + ferō), *bring together, collect*. sē cōnferre, *betake one's self*.

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus (ē or *ex* + *ferō*), *carry out, carry off.*

intellegō, intellegere, intelligēxī, intelligētus, *understand, perceive.*

et . . . et, correlative, *both . . . and.*

neque or *nec*, conj., *neither, nor, and . . . not.*

neque . . . neque (*nec . . . nec*), correlative conj., *neither . . . nor.*

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. *Cognōscimus bellum neque infirmīs neque miserīs favēre.*

2. *Intellēxī hostēs multum frūmentum ex oppidīs extulisse.*

3. *Reliquī in inferiōrēs partēs sē cōferant.*

4. *Dē tertiā vigiliā hominēs missī sunt quī cognōscerent quī ad impedimenta et carrōs sē contulissent.*

5. *Virī validī et arma et cibum ferēbant.*

Translate into Latin :

1. The happy father has brought many gifts for his small son.

2. Let us bear our labors willingly.

3. We understand why they betook themselves to the walls of the city.

4. After the lieutenants had been called together they replied that they were willing to carry arms.

5. The pirates had carried off all the gold in their ships.

LESSON CXXXI

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)

Passive voice of *ferō*, *bear*, *carry*

INDICATIVE

Present

I am borne, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>fe'ror</i>	<i>fe'rimur</i>
2. <i>fer'ris, -re</i>	<i>feri'minī</i>
3. <i>fer'tur</i>	<i>ferun'tur</i>

Imperfect

I was borne, etc.

1. <i>ferē'bar</i>	<i>ferēbā'mur</i>
2. <i>ferēbā'ris, -re</i>	<i>ferēbā'minī</i>
3. <i>ferēbā'tur</i>	<i>ferēban'tur</i>

Perfect

I have been borne, etc.

1. <i>lā'tus sum</i>	<i>lā'tī sumus</i>
2. <i>lā'tus es</i>	<i>lā'tī estis</i>
3. <i>lā'tus est</i>	<i>lā'tī sunt</i>

Pluperfect

I had been borne, etc.

1. <i>lā'tus eram</i>	<i>lā'tī erā'mus</i>
2. <i>lā'tus erās</i>	<i>lā'tī erā'tis</i>
3. <i>lā'tus erat</i>	<i>lā'tī erant</i>

Future

I shall be borne, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>fě'rar</i>	<i>ferě'mur</i>
2. <i>ferě'ris, -re</i>	<i>ferě'minī</i>
3. <i>ferě'tur</i>	<i>feren'tur</i>

Future Perfect

I shall have been borne, etc.

1. <i>lā'tus erō</i>	<i>lā'tī e'rimus</i>
2. <i>lā'tus eris</i>	<i>lā'tī e'ritis</i>
3. <i>lā'tus erit</i>	<i>lā'tī e'runt</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

1. <i>fe'rar</i>	<i>ferā'mur</i>
2. <i>ferā'ris, -re</i>	<i>ferā'minī</i>
3. <i>ferā'tur</i>	<i>feran'tur</i>

Imperfect

1. <i>fer'rer</i>	<i>ferrē'mur</i>
2. <i>ferrē'ris, -re</i>	<i>ferrē'minī</i>
3. <i>ferrē'tur</i>	<i>ferren'tur</i>

Perfect

1. <i>lā'tus sim</i>	<i>lā'tī simus</i>
2. <i>lā'tus sīs</i>	<i>lā'tī sītis</i>
3. <i>lā'tus sit</i>	<i>lā'tī sint</i>

Pluperfect

1. <i>lā'tus essem</i>	<i>lā'tī essē'mus</i>
2. <i>lā'tus essēs</i>	<i>lā'tī essē'tis</i>
3. <i>lā'tus esset</i>	<i>lā'tī essent</i>

Translate into Latin :

1. The baggage was brought together into one place.
2. Many letters, found in the camp of the enemy, had been brought to the general.
3. The enemy stormed the town without delay that they might carry off much booty.
4. Let the arms be brought into camp by the faithless slaves.
5. You must not endure these things.
6. We know that food has been carried into that region.

LESSON CXXXII

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)

Passive voice of *faciō*, *make*, *do*

Principal parts	{	Active, <i>faciō</i> , <i>facere</i> , <i>fēci</i> , <i>factus</i>
		Passive, <i>fiō</i> , <i>feri</i> , <i>factus sum</i> , <i>be made</i> ,
		<i>become</i> , <i>be done</i> , <i>happen</i>

INDICATIVE

Present

I am made, etc.

Perfect

I have been made, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>fi'ō</i>	<i>fi'mus</i>	<i>fac'tus sum</i>	<i>fac'ti sumus</i>
2. <i>fis</i>	<i>fi'tis</i>	<i>fac'tus es</i>	<i>fac'ti estis</i>
3. <i>fit</i>	<i>fi'unt</i>	<i>fac'tus est</i>	<i>fac'ti sunt</i>

Imperfect*I was made, etc.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. fiē'bam	fiēbā'mus
2. fiē'bās	fiēbā'tis
3. fiē'bat	fiē'bant

Pluperfect*I had been made, etc.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
fac'tus eram	fac'ti erā'mus
fac'tus erās	fac'ti erā'tis
fac'tus erat	fac'ti erant

Future*I shall be made, etc.*

1. fi'am	fiē'mus
2. fi'ēs	fiē'tis
3. fi'et	fi'ent

Future Perfect*I shall have been made, etc.*

fac'tus erō	fac'ti e'rimus
fac'tus eris	fac'ti e'ritis
fac'tus erit	fac'ti erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE**Present**

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. fi'am	fiā'mus
2. fi'ās	fiā'tis
3. fi'at	fi'ant

Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
fac'tus sim	fac'ti sīmus
fac'tus sis	fac'ti sītis
fac'tus sit	fac'ti sint

Imperfect

1. fi'erem	fiērē'mus
2. fi'erēs	fiērē'tis
3. fi'eret	fi'erent

Pluperfect

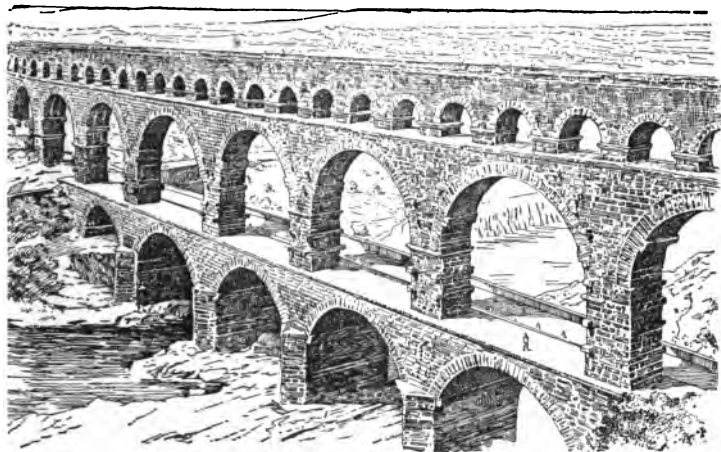
fac'tus essem	fac'ti essē'mus
fac'tus essēs	fac'ti essē'tis
fac'tus esset	fac'ti essent

IMPERATIVE

Present	fi (sing.)	fite (pl.)
---------	-------------------	-------------------

INFINITIVES

Present	fieri	Perfect	factus, -a, -um esse
Future	factum iri		



A ROMAN AQUEDUCT

Still in good repair, the Pont du Gard, near Nîmes, France



PAVEMENT OF A ROMAN VILLA IN ENGLAND

PARTICIPLES

Perfect **factus, -a, -um** Future **faciendus, -a, -um**
(gerundive)

Most compounds of **faciō** with prepositions change a of the present stem to i, and a of the participial stem to e. In the passive they are conjugated like the passive of **capiō**.

Active: cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī, cōfectus, finish.

Passive : cōficior, cōfici, cōfectus sum, *be finished.*

VOCABULARY

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, fall.

certiorem or certiōrēs facere, inform, assure.

cōnsilium, cōnsilī, n., *plan, purpose, design.*

nēmō, dat. **nēminī**, acc. **nēminem** (gen. **nūllius**, abl.

nūllō, supplied from **nūllus**), m. and f., *no one, nobody*.

servitūs, servitūtis, f., slavery, servitude.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Nēmō dixit hoc fierī posse.
2. Tum Caesar epistulīs certior fīēbat caedem māgnam fuisse.
3. Cōsiliū fugae ā Caesare et eius equitibus factum erat.
4. Milītēs tam ācriter contendērunt ut māgna pars hostium caderet.
5. Fit ut Helvētiī minus facile urbem circumveniant.
6. Sentit servitūtem faciiliōrem factum Irī.

Translate into Latin :

1. Many things become easy to do.
2. The general was informed that the enemy were beginning to approach the rampart.
3. The consuls had been made the guardians of the state.
4. Can these things be done? Yes.
5. An attack will be made upon them with swords.
6. The horsemen assembled as quickly as possible that they might not become useless to their general.

LESSON CXXXIII

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)

Conjugation of *eō*, *go*

Principal parts : *eō*, *ire*, *ii* or *ivī*, *itūrus*

INDICATIVE

Present		Perfect	
<i>I go, etc.</i>		<i>I have gone, etc.</i>	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>eō</i>	<i>i'mus</i>	<i>ii (ivī)</i>	<i>i'imus</i>
2. <i>is</i>	<i>i'tis</i>	<i>iis'ti</i>	<i>iis'tis</i>
3. <i>it</i>	<i>e'unt</i>	<i>iit</i>	<i>iē'runt</i> or <i>-ē're</i>

Imperfect		Pluperfect	
<i>I went, etc.</i>		<i>I had gone, etc.</i>	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>i'bam</i>	<i>ibā'mus</i>	<i>i'eram (i'veram)</i>	<i>ierā'mus</i>
2. <i>i'bās</i>	<i>ibā'tis</i>	<i>i'erās</i>	<i>ierā'tis</i>
3. <i>i'bat</i>	<i>i'bant</i>	<i>i'erat</i>	<i>i'erant</i>

Future

I shall go, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. i'bō	i'bimus
2. i'bis	i'bitis
3. i'bit	i'bunt

Future Perfect

I shall have gone, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
i'erō (i'verō)	ie'rimus
i'eris	ie'ritis
i'erit	i'erint

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. e'am	eā'mus
2. e'ās	eā'tis
3. e'at	e'ant

Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
i'erim (i'verim)	ie'rimus
i'eris	ie'ritis
i'erit	i'erint

Imperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. i'rem	irē'mus
2. i'rēs	irē'tis
3. i'ret	i'rent

Pluperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
is'sem (i'vis'sem)	issē'mus
is'sēs	issē'tis
is'set	is'sent

IMPERATIVE

Present i (sing.) ite (pl.)

INFINITIVES

Present ire Perfect isse (i'visse)

Future itūrus, -a, -um esse

PARTICIPLES

Present iēns (gen. euntis)
 Future itūrus, -a, -um (active)
 eundum (passive)

	GERUND	SUPINE
<i>Gen.</i>	eundi	<i>Acc.</i> itum
<i>Dat.</i>	eundō	<i>Abl.</i> itū
<i>Acc.</i>	eundum	
<i>Abl.</i>	eundō	

Notice that **i-**, the root of **eō**, is changed to **e-** before a vowel, excepting in **-iēns**, the nominative of the present participle. In the perfect system **-v-** is regularly dropped.

VOCABULARY

adeō, adīre, adī, aditus (**ad** + **eō**), *go to, visit* (with the accusative).

exeō, exīre, exī, exitus (**ex** + **eō**), *go out, go forth* (with **ex** or **dē** and the ablative).

ineō, inīre, inī, initus (**in** + **eō**), *go into, begin, enter upon* (with the accusative).

redeō, redīre, redī, reditus (**red** + **eō**), *go back, return* (with **ad** or **in** and the accusative).

trānseō, trānsīre, trānsī, trānsitus (**trāns** + **eō**), *go across, cross* (with the accusative).

aut, conj., or. aut . . . aut, correl. conj., either . . . or. nōn solum . . . sed etiam, correl. conj., not only . . . but also.

undique, adv., on all sides, from every quarter.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Imperātor māgnīs itineribus ¹ contendit ut ante adventum hostium flūmen trānseat.

¹ **Māgnīs itineribus**, *by forced marches.*

2. Nox adpropinquat ; domum eāmus.

3. Aut timor hostium, quī undique premēbant, aut longitūdō viae eōs terruit.

4. Helvetiī duōbus itineribus domō exīre poterant.

5. Facultās redeundī domum ab hostibus ērepta erat.

6. Rēgīna pulchra erat superba nōn solum formā sed etiam suā potentiā.

Translate into Latin :

1. Will you [*sing.*] go home with me?

2. The number of those who returned home was very small.

3. The scouts replied that no one had visited that island for very many years.

4. Go [*ye*], or I shall return home.

5. They had begun [*entered upon*] a design against the leaders.

6. Let us not cross the river before night.

LESSON CXXXIV

DEPONENT VERBS

A deponent verb is one which has passive forms with active meanings ; as, *hortor*, *I urge, encourage* ; *polliceor*, *I promise*. The principal parts of a deponent verb are passive forms. Deponents have only two stems, the present and the participial.

Besides having all the forms of the passive, deponent verbs have the following active forms : the present par-

ticiples, as, **hortāns**, *urging* ; the future participle, as, **hortātūrus**, -a, -um, *about to urge* ; the future infinitive, as, **hortātūrus**, -a, -um **esse**, *to be about to urge* ; the gerund, as, **hortāndī**, etc. ; and the supine, as, **hortātum** and **hortātū**.

The endings of the present infinitives which are used to indicate the four regular conjugations are :

I	II	III	IV
-āri	-ēri	-i	-iri

Conjugation of *hortor*

INDICATIVE

Present

I urge, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. hor'tor	hortā'mur
2. hortā'ris, -re	hortā'mini
3. hortā'tur	hortan'tur

Imperfect

I was urging, etc.

1. hortā'bar	hortābā'mur
2. hortābā'ris, -re	hortābā'mini
3. hortābā'tur	hortāban'tur

Perfect

I have urged, etc.

1. hortā'tus sum	hortā'ti sumus
2. hortā'tus es	hortā'ti estis
3. hortā'tus est	hortā'ti sunt

Pluperfect*I had urged, etc.***SINGULAR****PLURAL**

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. hortā'tus eram | hortā'ti erā'mus |
| 2. hortā'tus erās | hortā'ti erā'tis |
| 3. hortā'tus erat | hortā'ti erant |

Future*I shall urge, etc.*

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------|
| 1. hortā'bor | hortā'bimur |
| 2. hortā'beris, -re | hortābi'minī |
| 3. hortā'bitur | hortābun'tur |

Future Perfect*I shall have urged, etc.*

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. hortā'tus erō | hortā'ti e'rimus |
| 2. hortā'tus eris | hortā'ti e'ritis |
| 3. hortā'tus erit | hortā'ti erunt. |

SUBJUNCTIVE**Present**

- | | |
|-------------------|------------|
| 1. hor'ter | hortē'mur |
| 2. hortē'ris, -re | hortē'minī |
| 3. hortē'tur | horten'tur |

Imperfect

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------|
| 1. hortā'rer | hortārē'mur |
| 2. hortārē'ris, -re | hortārē'minī |
| 3. hortārē'tur | hortāren'tur |

Perfect

SINGULAR

1. hortā'tus sim
2. hortā'tus sis
3. hortā'tus sit

PLURAL

- hortā'ti simus
- hortā'ti sitis
- hortā'ti sint

Pluperfect

1. hortā'tus essem hortā'ti essē'mus
2. hortā'tus essēs hortā'ti essē'tis
3. hortā'tus esset hortā'ti essent

IMPERATIVE

Present hortāre, *urge* (thou) hortāmini, *urge* (ye)

INFINITIVES

Present hortārī, *to urge*
 Perfect hortātus, -a, -um esse, *to have urged*
 Future hortātūrus, -a, -um esse, *to be about to urge*

PARTICIPLES

Present hortāns, *urging*
 Perfect hortātus, -a, -um, *having urged*
 Future { hortātūrus, -a, -um, *about to urge*
 { hortandus, -a, -um, *about to be urged* (gerun-
 dive)

GERUND

SUPINE

Gen.	hortandī, <i>of urging</i>	Acc.	hortātum, <i>urging, to</i>
Dat.	hortandō, <i>for urging</i>		<i>urge</i>
Acc.	hortandum, <i>urging</i>	Abl.	hortātū, <i>in the urg-</i>
Abl.	hortandō, <i>by urging</i>		<i>ing, to urge</i>

Deponent verbs of Conjugations II, III, and IV are inflected like the passive of *moneō*, *dūcō*, *capiō*, and *audiō*.

VOCABULARY

arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum, think, suppose.

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum (with infinitive), try, attempt.

**cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum (cōn + sequor),
pursue, overtake, win.**

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, enjoy.

moror, morārī, morātus sum, delay.

patior, patī, passus sum (with infinitive), suffer, permit.

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, promise.

potior, potīrī, potītus sum, get possession of, gain.

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, set out.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow.

ūtōr, ūtī, ūsus sum, use.

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear, be afraid.

EXERCISE

Inflect in all the tenses of the indicative and subjunctive :

- | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|
| 1. Cōnor. | 3. Sequor. | 5. Potior. |
| 2. Vereor. | 4. Patior. | |

Translate, analyzing the verb forms :

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Ūtitur. | 6. Pollicēberis. |
| 2. Verēbimur. | 7. Patiēbar. |
| 3. Sequēris. | 8. Morēmur. |
| 4. Proficīscātur. | 9. Frūctus es. |
| 5. Potiēminī. | 10. Cōnsecūtī erātis. |

Translate into Latin :

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. I suppose. | 3. We had enjoyed. |
| 2. He will have set out. | 4. Let them fear. |

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 5. Let us promise. | 8. You [<i>sing.</i>] have used. |
| 6. You [<i>pl.</i>] will follow. | 9. I shall permit. |
| 7. They were delaying. | 10. They get possession of. |

Deponents with the Ablative

The verbs *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vēscor*, and their compounds, regularly take their objects in the ablative case.

Gladiō ūtētur.

He will use a sword.

Urbe potīrī erant.

They had gained possession of the city.

LESSON CXXXV

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Caesar cum omnibus cōpiīs primā lūce profectus est.
2. Moenibus potīrī cōnābimur.
3. Trēs ex lēgātīs iter facere per finīs hostium verēbantur.
4. Pollicitī erant sē cuique dominō servītūrōs esse.
5. Nē agrum arāre cōnēmur.
6. Persuāsīmus imperātōribus ut eōdem cōnsiliō ūterentur.
7. Equitātus hostīs multa mīlia passuum cōnsequātur.
8. Arbitrārisne nōs castrīs hostium potīrī posse?

Translate into Latin :

1. The enemy have followed us three miles.
2. Who had urged the soldiers to fight?
3. Having promised to give hostages, the ambassadors returned home.
4. Let the foot-soldiers enjoy their victory.
5. Will you [*pl.*] permit our men to go through your province?
6. Would that they had not delayed at Athens!
7. The barbarians had tried to keep him from the island.
8. We know who have gained possession of Gaul.

LESSON CXXXVI

THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

A number of verbs, some transitive and some intransitive, which in their simple form would not take an indirect object, when compounded with certain prepositions have a meaning which calls for an indirect object. If the verb which forms part of the compound is transitive, it may take a direct object in the accusative. This may be in addition to the dative taken by the compound as a whole, or without it.

Militibus frātre[m] praeficiēbam.

I placed my brother in command of the soldiers.

Militibus praeceram.

I was in command of the soldiers.

Imperātor nūntiū[m] praemisit.

The general sent a messenger ahead.

RULE

Some verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, and sometimes circum take a dative of the indirect object.

The following are such verbs :

adsum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus (ad + sum), *be present ; assist.*

inferō, inferre, intuli, inlatus (in + ferō), *bring against, bring upon. bellum inferre, make war upon.*

intersum, interesse, interfui, interfuturus (inter + sum), *take part in.*

occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occursus (ob + currō), *run against, meet.*

praeficiō, praeficere, praefeci, praefectus (prae + faciō), *place in command of.*

praestō, praestāre, praestiti, praestitus (prae + stō), *excel, surpass.*

praesum, praeesse, praefui, — (prae + sum), *be over, be in command.*

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Quem imperātor huic legiōnī praeficiet?
2. Mārcus frātrī vīribus praestat.
3. Prōvinciis praesumus.
4. Nostrī hostibus occurrerunt, sed eōs celeriter superāverunt.
5. Nē scelerī intersimus.
6. Utinam antea Germānīs bellum intulissent.

Translate into Latin :

1. We heard that lack of weapons had brought disaster to our army.
2. Let us assist the army with food and money.
3. Are you in command of yourselves?
4. They came to make war upon Caesar's allies.
5. The woman excels her daughters in courage.
6. I have been informed that the general will not take part in that battle.

LESSON CXXXVII

REVIEW SENTENCES

1. Hostēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, multō fortius pūgnāvērunt.
2. Scīvimus Rōmānōs frūmentō egēre.
3. Utinam sociīs nostrīs bellum inferre nōlisset.
4. Impedimentīs in ūnum locum conlātīs, aliquī militum flūmen trānsiērunt.
5. Nē aetātem et mortem timeāmus.
6. Nihil est clārius sōle.
7. Nōlī amīcōs vexāre.
8. Hīs rēbus cognitīs sēnsimus lēgātōs nōn vēnisse ad pācem petendam.
9. Quid agātis scīre possumus.
10. Undique ūnō tempore impetus in hostīs fiēbat.
11. Dē ducis adventū certiōrēs factī sumus.
12. Rēx eōs hortātus est ut ōrāculum adīrent.
13. Dēditiōnem māluērunt.

14. Peditēs, sanguinem captīvōrum videntēs, moenia oppūgnāvērunt.

15. Mentēs hominum sunt celeriōrēs aquilīs.

16. Imperātor quibusdam mīlitibus imperāvit ut in mūrō sedērent.

17. Dicunt sē galeās induere velle.

18. Brevitās temporis nēminī facultātem armōrum rapiendōrum dedit.

19. Venīte ad fontem pulchrum videndum.

20. Nostrī mīlitēs tam fortiter pūgnāvērunt ut hostēs condiōnēs pācis nōn recūsārent.

LESSON CXXXVIII

CHARLES THE FARMER

Carolus, quī agricola optimus est, rūrī vīvit. Cotīdiē prīmā lūce dīligerter labōrāre incipit et tōtam diem māgnā cum dīligentiā labōrat. Fīlia bona domī manet ut eī cibum paret. Merīdiē eum ad cēnam vocat. Nocte agricola dēfessus labōre domum redit. Aestāte filiī Carolī eum iuvant. Hieme eōs in lūdum mittit ut ā magistrō bonō doceantur. Magister puerīs multās fābulās dē rēbus imperātōrum māgnōrum nārrat. Eīs aliās rēs quoque docet. Aestāte filiī agricolae dūrīs labōribus exercentur, sed patrī quem cārē amant fidī semper sunt. Ita Carolus vītā fruitur, sine ūllā cūrā vivit, et nihil timet.

LESSON CXXXIX

SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CUM

A clause introduced by **cum** meaning *when* is used to describe the situation in which the act of the principal clause took place. In such a clause **cum** is followed by the subjunctive, commonly the imperfect or pluperfect tense.

Cum pōns factus esset, imperātor cum exercitū flūmen trānsiit.

When the bridge **had been made**, the general with his army crossed the river.

When the **cum** clause states a fact and simply gives the date of the action described by the principal clause, the indicative mood is used.

Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, exercitum vīdimus.

When Caesar **came** into Gaul, we saw his army. (The temporal clause fixes the time at which we saw Caesar's army.)

RULES

Cum in a temporal clause is followed by the subjunctive unless its clause fixes the time at which the main action took place.

Cum meaning *when* is always used with the indicative when the principal verb is present or future.

A subordinate clause introduced by **cum** meaning *since* has its verb in the subjunctive.

Cum nōs dēfendere nōn possēmus, auxilium petēbāmus.

Since we **could** not defend ourselves, we were asking aid.

RULE

Cum in a causal clause is regularly followed by the subjunctive.

A subordinate clause introduced by **cum** meaning *although* has its verb in the subjunctive.

Cum periculum magnum esset, tamen non se tradiderunt.
Although the danger **was** great, yet they did not surrender.

RULE

Cum in a concessive clause is followed by the subjunctive.

The adverb **tamen** usually stands in the main clause with which a concessive clause is connected.

VOCABULARY

imperium, imperi, n., *command, order ; empire ; power.*

inter, prep. with acc., *between, among.*

nē . . . quidem, adv., *not even.* The emphatic word stands between **nē** and **quidem**.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Cum hostēs bellō clārissimī essent, iter per prōvinciam facere recūsāvimus.

2. Cum spēs victōriæ māgna sit, tamen imperātor proeliō nōn interest.

3. Nē virtūte quidem imperātōrēs erant parēs mīlitibus.

4. Cum lēgātus aciem novam instrūxisset, hostēs discessērunt.

5. Principēs dīcunt sē nūllum cōnsilium contrā Caesaris imperium initūrōs esse.

6. Cum Caesar in Galliā erat, aliōs agrōs petēbāmus.

Translate into Latin :

1 Although the horsemen are few in number, nevertheless they do not surrender.

2. When the two legions had been left in the camp, the general led the remaining troops across the marsh.

3. They will learn that there is a large lake between the forest and the mountain.

4. They killed many captives when we were at Rome.

5. Since you are not able to go, send a messenger.

6. Although the town was large, yet a few soldiers could easily defend it.

LESSON CXL

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES OF FACT

A conditional sentence is a complex sentence one clause of which expresses a condition, the other a conclusion : If he conquers, it is well. *If he conquers* is the condition, *it is well*, the conclusion.

In Latin the conditional clause is most frequently introduced by *sī, if* ; *nisi, if not, unless*.

When the conditional clause assumes something to be

true and the conclusion contains a statement of fact, the indicative is used both in the conditional clause and in the conclusion.

Sī vincit, bene est.

If he conquers, it is well.

(Present time and present tense)

Sī vincēbat, bene erat.

If he was conquering, it was well.

(Past time and imperfect tense)

Sī vicit, bene fuit.

If he conquered, it was well.

(Past time and perfect tense)

Sī vincet, bene erit.

If he conquers (shall conquer), it will be well.

(Future time and future tense)

VOCABULARY

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, commit, intrust.

prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum, move forward, advance.

valēō, -ēre, valui, valitūrus, be strong, be well ; in the imperative as a greeting, farewell.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Sī mihi liberōs mandābis, domī manēbō.
2. Sī oppidum mūnītur, id capere nōn possumus.
3. Sī amīcum laudāveris, ab amīcō laudāberis.
4. Sī animum vīcistī, hostem ācerrimūn vīcistī.

5. *Sī prōgredi cōnābantur, hostēs eōs prohibēbant.*

6. *Sī patriam amātis, este ¹ fortēs.*

Translate into Latin :

1. If the general is with the army, all things are well.

2. If the soldiers are (will be) brave, they will be praised by all.

3. If the enemy were collecting an army, they wished to wage war.

4. If you [*sing.*] have been good, you have not been blamed.

5. If the cavalry are crossing the river, I do not see them.

6. If we conquer (shall conquer), you [*pl.*] will be unharmed.

LESSON CXLI

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES OF DOUBT

A conditional sentence which implies doubt on the part of the speaker or writer as to the fulfillment of the condition, and which has as its conclusion a verb denoting an act as conceivable, is called a conditional sentence of doubt. The conclusion states that something would take place if a certain condition *should* be fulfilled. Both verbs are put in the present subjunctive.

Sī vincat, bene sit.

If he should conquer, it would be well.

¹ Sometimes an imperative is used in the conclusion of a conditional sentence of this kind instead of an indicative.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. *Sī mē cēlēs, nōn timeam.*
2. *Sī urbs capiātur, templum ā mīlitibus dēleātur.*
3. *Sī obsidēs ab hostibus dentur, cum eīs pācem faciāmus.*
4. *Amīcus meus vōcem virī audīre volēbat.*
5. *Sī dentēs mōnstrī erunt longī, puerō nocēbunt.*
6. *Nisi sē dēfendere possint, lēgātōs mittant auxilium petītum.*

Translate into Latin :

1. If ambassadors should be sent, peace would be made.
2. If the legion should cross the river, the cavalry would hesitate to flee.
3. If you [*pl.*] can run, we can follow.
4. If the enemy have seized the top of the mountain, they have conquered.
5. If the army of the enemy should be larger than ours, we should be in great danger.
6. If you [*sing.*] should wish, I would inform you about my journey.

LESSON CXLII

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT

A conditional sentence which implies by its form that the condition is not true, and that the actual situation is not that which is referred to in the conclusion, is called a

conditional sentence contrary to fact. If the thing is contrary to fact *at the present time*, both verbs are put in the imperfect subjunctive; if it is contrary to fact *in the past*, both verbs are put in the pluperfect subjunctive.

Sī vinceret, bene esset.

If he were conquering, it would be well.

Sī vicisset, bene fuisset.

If he had conquered, it would have been well.

EXERCISE

Translate into English :

1. Sī melius dēfenderēmur, capī nōn possēmus.
2. Sī urbs capta esset, multī cīvēs interfectī essent.
3. Sī hostēs in silvā abderent, periculum esset.
4. Sī Rōmae fuistī, domum Mārcī vīdistī.
5. Sī hostibus bellum inferāmus, oppida nostra dēleant.
6. Nisi pācem facere voluissent, lēgātōs nōn mīsissent.

Translate into Latin :

1. If the general had not led out his forces at that time, the city would have been taken.
2. If the enemy were approaching, we should not be remaining in this place.
3. If the lieutenants had obeyed Caesar's commands, the army would not have been defeated.
4. If they should see the enemy, they would flee.
5. If you [*pl.*] long for greater freedom, you will fight as bravely as possible.

LESSON CXLIII

REVIEW SENTENCES

Translate into English :

1. Vīdimus multitudinem armōrum dē mūrō in fossam iactam esse.

2. Hōc rūmōre audītō, tantus erat timor omnium ut nē fortissimī quidem pūgnāre vellent.

3. Ducem cum quattuor cohortibus praesidiō legiōnibus reliquērunt.

4. Dē ponte in fluctūs dēsiliāmus.

5. Sī militēs hortēminī, fortius pūgnent.

6. Multās hōrās ācriter pūgnāvērunt et nēmō hostēs fugientēs vidēre poterat.

7. Victōria est semper imperātōrī grātissima.

8. Cīvēs ex oppidō prōgressī salūtem fugā petere incipiēbant.

9. Vīcus in valle montibus altissimīs undique continētur.

10. Militibus persuāsī ut in aggere stārent.

11. Quid in urbe ēgeris scīmus.

12. Timōre servitūtis commōtī bellum cum studiō parābāmus.

13. Nē in pāce vīvere nōluissēmus.

14. Monēmus lēgātōs nē spē praedae longius prōgrediantur.

15. Tōtīus exercitūs dux erat audācissimus.

16. Si adfuissēs, ōrātiōnem longam audīvissēs.

17. Cum imperātor āciem īstruxisset, legiōnibus sīgnum dedit.

18. Mīsistisne explōrātōrēs ad locum castrīs dēligendum?

19. Scīvī quid dē armīs trādendīs dictum esset.

20. Eōrum amīcitiam cōnfirmāre voluērunt quō facilius Rōmānīs bellum īferrent.

21. Erat rēx māximā potentiā.

22. Cum bellum gerere mālint, nōlīte eōs prohibēre.

23. Nisi peditēs pervenient, hostēs flūmen trānsībunt.

24. Lībertāte patriae fruāmur.

25. Vōbīs omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda.

26. Cum cum hostibus contendere nōllent, tamen fugere nōn cōnābantur.

27. Vēnī tē monitum.

28. Facultās eius locī relinquendī militī dēfessō nōn data erat.

29. Meum cōnsilium est multō melius quam tuum quod facilius est.

30. Verbīs explōrātōris crēditūrus erat.

LESSON CXLIV

VOCABULARY REVIEW

cōnsilium	arbitror	cōnsequor
imperium	cadō	efferō
nēmō	certiōrem facere	exeō
servitūs	cognōscō	ferō
adeō	cōnferō	fiō
adferō	coniūrō	fruor
adsum	cōnor	hortor

ineō	potior	vereor
inferō	praeſciō	volō
intellegō	praeſtō	crēber
intersum	praeſum	perfidus
mālō	premō	inter
mandō	proficiſcor	nē . . . quidem
moror	prōgredior	tamen
occurrō	redeō	aut
patior	sequor	neque
perferō	trāſeō	ſi
polliceor	ūtor	nisi
possum	valeō	

What Latin words are suggested by the following English words?

interstate	arbitration	posse
consequence	exit	decadence
patience	recognize	progress
intelligence	pressure	mandate
servitude	volition	value
belligerent	sequence	relinquish

Give other English words derived from the Latin words suggested.

LATIN PHRASES COMMON IN ENGLISH

Ad astra per aspera.	<i>To the stars through difficulties.</i>
Carpe diem.	<i>Seize the opportunity.</i>
Docendo discitur.	<i>We learn by teaching.</i>
Errare humanum est.	<i>To err is human.</i>
Esse quam videri.	<i>To be rather than to seem.</i>
Ex animo.	<i>Sincerely.</i>
Fiat lux.	<i>Let there be light.</i>
Finis coronat opus.	<i>The end crowns the work.</i>
Fortes fortuna iuvat.	<i>Fortune favors the brave.</i>
In hoc signo vinces.	<i>In this sign you shall conquer.</i>
In medias res.	<i>Into the midst of things.</i>
Non omnia possumus omnes.	<i>We can't all do everything.</i>
Non sibi sed omnibus.	<i>Not for one's self but for all.</i>
Omnia mutantur.	<i>All things change.</i>
Periculum in mora.	<i>Danger in delay.</i>
Possunt quia posse videntur.	<i>They can because they think they can.</i>
Quod erat demonstrandum.	<i>Which was to be proved.</i>

Semper idem.	<i>Always the same.</i>
Semper paratus.	<i>Always ready.</i>
Sic semper tyrannis.	<i>Ever thus to tyrants.</i>
Sine die.	<i>Without a day.</i>
Suum cuique.	<i>To everyone his own.</i>
Vincit qui se vincit.	<i>He conquers who conquers himself.</i>
Virginibus puerisque.	<i>For girls and boys.</i>

COLLOQUIAL PHRASES

Adde gradum.	<i>Hurry up.</i>
Cūrā ut valeās.	<i>Take care of yourself.</i>
Cūrāte ut valeātis.	<i>Take care of yourselves.</i>
Ēheu.	<i>Alas !</i>
Eugē.	<i>Good !</i>
Licet.	<i>All right.</i>
Male nārrās.	<i>I am sorry to hear it.</i>
Māximē vērō.	<i>Yes indeed.</i>
Nīl agis.	<i>It's no use.</i>
Quid agis ?	<i>How do you do ?</i>
Quid agitis ?	<i>How do you do ?</i>
Salvē or Salvēte.	<i>Good morning, Good day.</i>
Ut ita dīcam.	<i>So to speak.</i>
Valē or Valēte.	<i>Good-by.</i>

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

Quam fortissimē	Domī
Sub monte	Hōc proeliō nūntiātō
Sub iugum	Brevī tempore
Paulō ante mediam noctem	Tertiā hōrā
Iter facere	Mediō colle
Mediā nocte	Ab summō colle
Multō diē	Certiōrem facere
Posterō diē	Māgnō numerō interfectō
Sōlis occāsū	Multis dē causīs
Ex omnibus partibus	Prīmum agmen
Hāc ōrātiōne adductī	Novissimum agmen
Salūtis causā	Māgnā cum celeritāte
Ā dextrō cornū	Cum decimā legiōne
Ā sinistrō cornū	Prīmā lūce
Diū atque ācriter	Ab superiōre parte
Castra mōvit	Sē recipere
Castra posuit	Minus facile

SONGS

GAUDEAMUS IGITUR

Gaudeamus igitur
Juvenes dum sumus ;
Post jucundam juventutem,
Post molestam senectutem,
Nos habebit humus.

Vita nostra brevis est
Brevi finietur,
Venit mors velociter,
Rapit nos atrociter,
Nemini parcetur.

Vivat et res publica
Et qui illam regit,
Vivat nostra civitas,
Maecenatum caritas,
Quae nos his protegit.

O DULCIS AMOR

O dulcis amor, qui me facis
Per totas horas divitem,
Tu das mihi quod aestimo
In omni vita maximum.



A DINING ROOM
From a Pompeian wall painting

O tristis amor, qui me facis
Idem longe miserrimam,
Dum torqueor, dum cogito
Quam mox rapiantur omnia.

WOODMAN, SPARE THAT TREE

Tū parce illī arborī !
Nec nocē ramulō !
Prōfuit juvenī
Mihi ; acillam dēfendō
Proavus posuit
Juxta illīus casam !
Lignātor, manēbit !
Nē molīre asciam.

Truncum veterrimum
Amāvī ; ac umbram,
Ceu cōsanguineum —
Succiderēsne illam ?
Nec ice lignātor ;
Nec caede stipitem ;
Quercum illam patitor
Flōrēre veterem.

Dum puer, otiō,
Petīvī umbrāculum ;
Hīc sorōrēs, gaudiō
Lusērunt ver novum ;

Hīc māter fōvit mē,
Hīs pater amāvit —
Huic lacrimae ignōsce ;
Ac sine ut arbor stet.

Praecordia tenent
Tē, ut liber, amīce !
Hinc volucrēs canent
Ad aurās amoenē
Sperne arbor prōcellam !
Lignātor hinc abī !
Nōn tendēs asciam
Dum manus erit mihi.

FABLES AND STORIES

UNION IS STRENGTH

Agricola senex,¹ cum mortem sibi adpropinquāre sentīret, filiōs suōs convocāvit, quī interdum² discordābant.³ Senex fascem⁴ virgulārum⁵ adferri iussit. Quibus⁶ adlātīs, filiōs hortātur ut hunc fascem⁴ frangerent. Quod⁷ cum facere nōn possent, distribuit senex singulās⁸ virgulās, quās celeriter frēgērunt. Tum exclāmāvit agricola: "Quam⁹ firma rēs est concordia, quam imbēcillis¹⁰ discordia."

THE MICE AND THE CAT

Mūrēs aliquandō¹¹ concilium habēbant, nam quandam fēlem māgnopere timēbant. Multīs cōnsiliīs prōpositīs, omnibus¹² placuit, ut eī tintinnābulum¹³ annexerētur; sīc enim ipsōs¹⁴ sonitū admonitōs eam fugere posse. Sed cum iam inter mūrīs quae- rerētur¹⁵ quī fēlī tintinnābulum annexeret, nēmō repertus est, multī etenim¹⁶ in suādendō¹⁷ audācēs sunt, sed in periculō ipsō timidī.

¹ old. Often used as a noun.

² sometimes

³ disagreed

⁴ fascis, -is, m., *bundle*

⁵ virgula, -ae, f., *small rod*

⁶ when these had been brought

⁷ this

⁸ one to each

⁹ how

¹⁰ weak

¹¹ once

¹² all resolved

¹³ bell

¹⁴ Subject of *posse*

¹⁵ the question was raised

¹⁶ for as you know

¹⁷ Gerund of *suādeō*

THE TRUMPET A MIGHTY WEAPON

Tubicen,¹ ab hostibus captus, exclāmāvit: "Nōn sum interficiendus, nam inermis sum et nihil habeō praeter hanc tubam." Sed hostēs respondērunt: "Propter hoc ipsum² tē interficiēmus, quod aliōs ad pūgnam incitāre solēs." Nōn solum malefici³ sunt pūniendī, sed etiam eī quī aliōs ad male faciendum⁴ incitant.

THE FLATTERED CROW

Corvus⁵ quī caseum⁶ rapuerat, in altam arborem subvolāvit. Vulpēcula,⁷ quae caseum appetēbat, corvum ita adloquitur: "Formam tuam māgnopere laudō et pennārum tuārum nitōrem. Pol!⁸ sī cantus tuus pulchrītūdini⁹ tuae respondet,¹⁰ rēx avium es." Tum corvus, laudibus vulpēculae inflātus,¹¹ cantāre cōnātus est. Sed ē rostrō apertō delāpsus est caseus, quem vulpēcula statim devorāvit. Verba adulātōrum sunt pretī¹² parvī, ut¹³ haec fābula docet.

¹ trumpeter² that very thing³ evil doers⁴ to doing mischief⁵ crow⁶ cheese⁷ little fox⁸ by Pollux⁹ beauty¹⁰ is equal to¹¹ puffed up¹² of value¹³ ut, meaning as, takes the indicative

DANGER IN DISCORD

In eōdem prātō pāscēbantur trēs bovēs¹ in māximā concordiā, et sic ab omnī ferārū incursiōne tūtī erant. Sed dissidiō inter illōs ortō, singulī² ā ferīs petītī et laniātī sunt. Fābula docet quantum bonī³ sit in concordiā.

THE DEER AND THE VINE

Ōlim cerva, quae celerrimē fugiēbat ut vēnātōrū ē manibus sē ēriperet, sub vitem sē abdidit. Intereā vēnātōrēs sequentēs longius⁴ prōgrediuntur. Sed cerva nōn iam⁵ timēns vēnātōrēs folia vītis carpere incipiēbat. Folia agitantur, quod vēnātōrēs vident et statim redeunt. Mox sentiunt ibi aliquod animal sub foliis abdere et sagittīs cervam vulnerant. Brevī tempore animal miserum vulneribus⁶ moritur.⁷

THE FAITHLESS TARPEIA

Sabīnī ōlim cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbant. Cum Rōmae adpropinquārent, ut urbem caperent, forte in Tarpēiam virginem incidērunt, quae arcem sacram cūrābat. Hanc rogāvērunt, ut viam in arcem mōnstrāret. Sabīnī Tarpēiae permīsērunt ut prae-mium sibi posceret. Illa petiit, ut sibi ōrnāmenta darent, quae in sinistrīs manibus gererent. Cum Tarpēia diceret sē cōpiās eōrum in arcem ductūram

¹ oxen² one at a time³ genitive⁴ too far⁵ no longer⁶ of wounds⁷ from morior, die

esse, Sabīnī nōn recūsāvērunt. Per māgnās portās cum Tarpēiā properāvērunt et mox intrā validōs et altōs mūrōs arcis stābant. At hostēs, in arcem ab eā perductī, sine morā in Tarpēiam scūta iēcērunt; nam ea quoque in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant. Ita perfida et superba Tarpēia, quae ōrnāmenta pulchra semper amāverat et dēsiderāverat, interfecta est; ita Sabīnī arcem occupāvērunt.

TREATY WITH THE SABINES

Tum Rōmulus cum hostibus, quī arcem tenēbant, proelium commisit. Fēminae, in mediā caede raptae, patrēs et coniugēs et socerōs complectēbantur, et rogābant, ut finem caedis facerent. Utrīque hīs precibus commōtī sunt. Rōmulus foedus icit et Sabīnōs in urbem recēpit.

HORATIUS AT THE BRIDGE

Tarquinius Superbus, septimus et ultimus rēx Rōmānōrum, in exsilium ā Rōmānīs ēiectus, ā Porsenā, rēge Etrūscōrum, auxilium petiit. Mox Porsena māgnō cum exercitū Rōmam vēnit. Ipsa urbs et cīvēs summō in periculō erant. Exercitū Rōmānō victō, rēx montem Iāniculum occupāvit. Timor Rōmānōrum tantus erat ut ex agrīs Rōmānī properārent et māgnō cum studiō urbem mūnīrent. Altera pars urbis mūrīs, altera flūmine mūniēbātur. Pōns in flūmine hostibus iter paene dedit, sed virtūs

ūnīus virī fortis urbem ā periculō liberāvit. Hic vir, Horātius nōmine, hostēs ad pontem venīre vidēs, mīlitibus Rōmānīs imperāvit ut pontem rescinderent. Mīlītēs autem, praeter Horātium ipsum et duōs sociōs, fūgērunt. Iam hostēs in ponte erant, sed Horātius cum duōbus sociīs ad extrēmam partem pontis properāvit, et hī sōlī aciem hostium sustinuērunt. Horātius pontem rescindī ā tergō¹ iussit, et hostēs frūstrā eum superāre temptāvērunt. Parvā parte pontis relictā, Horātius sociōs suōs discēdere iussit et sōlus impetum illīus tōtīus exercitūs sustinēbat. Dēnique pōns in flūmen dēcidit. Tum Horātius armātus in fluctūs dēsiluit. In eum hostēs multa tēla iēcērunt, sed incolumis per fluctūs ad suōs trānāvit. Propter summam virtūtem et mīram cōstantiam populus Rōmānus statuam Horātī in locō pūblicō posuit.

CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS

Tiberius Gracchus et Gāius Gracchus erant filiī Cornēliae, Africānī² filiae. Apud antiqūās dominās Rōmānās, Cornēlia erat clārissima. Erat māter optima et filiōs cārē amāvit. Cornēlia cum filiīs suis Rōmae habitābat. Ibi eōs cūrābat et māgnā cum dīligentiā eōs docēbat, quod bonam disciplīnam amābat.

Proximum domiciliō Cornēliae erat Campānae

¹ Ā tergō, behind him.

² Scipio Africanus, the conqueror of Hannibal.

pulchrae domicilium. Cum Campāna, quae erat superba nōn solum formā sed etiam suis ōrnāmentis pulcherrimis, Cornēliae ōrnāmenta sua mōnstrāret, Cornēlia filiōs suōs Tiberium et Gāium vocāvit. “Haec,” inquit, “mea ōrnāmenta sunt.”

CINCINNATUS

Cincinnātus agricola Rōmānus fuit, quī in agris suis diligentissimē labōrāvit. Mīles nōn fuit sed patriam māximē amāvit. Cum Rōma in periculō māgnō esset, nūntiī ad eum ā cīvibus missi sunt ut ad bellum eum vocārent. Cum ad agrum venīrent, Cincinnātum arāre vīderunt, sed eī periculum patriae nārrāvērunt. Ad bellum properāvit et dictātor imperātorque factus est. Populum patriae cum exercitū fortissimē dēfendit et brevī tempore hostēs vicit. Hostibus victis, agricola fortis ad agrōs rediit, sed ab omnibus cīvibus amātus et laudātus est.

NOT AT HOME

Nāsica et Ennius poēta amīcī erant. Ōlim Nāsica ad Ennium vēnit et ad portam dē eō quaesivit. Serva dixit, “Ennius domī nōn est.” Vidēbat autem Ennium Nāsica, nihil tamen dixit, sed domum revertit.

Paucis post diēbus ad Nāsicam vēnit Ennius. Huic ipse Nāsica exclāmāvit, “Nōn sum domī.” Tum Ennius dixit, “Nōne cognōscō vōcem tuam?” Nāsica autem respondit, “Homō es impudēs; ego servae tuae crēdidī; tū nōn mihi crēdis.”

THE SEVEN ROMAN KINGS

Rōmulus, prīmus rēx Rōmae, Sabīnōs vīcit, et eōs ad populum Rōmānum adiūnxit. Asylum patefecit ut numerum cīvium augēret. Ad quod multī ex cīvitātibus suis ēiectī fūgērunt. Centum senātōrēs lēgit et eōs patrēs appellāvit. Populum in trīgintā cūriās distribuit.

Post mortem Rōmulī interrēgnum ūnīus annī fuit. Quō ēlapsō, Numa Pompilius rēx creātus est. Hic vir nūllum bellum gessit ; tamen cīvitātī prōfuit. Nam et lēgēs dedit, et sacra plūrima instituit, ut morēs populī barbarī molliret. Annum in decem mēnsēs dēscrīpsit.

Numae successit Tullus Hostīlius, quī bellum Albānīs intulit. Cum trīgintā duōs annōs rēgnāset, fulmine ictus cum domō suā cremāvit.

Post hunc Ancus Mārcius, Nūmac ex filiā nepōs, imperium suscēpit. Erat vir māgnā iūstitiā. Urbem ampliāvit, moenia nova fēcit, et prīmum carcerem aedificāvit.

Deinde rēgnum Tārquinius Prīscus accēpit. Cum rēx Ancus eum filiōrum suōrum tūtōrem reliquisset, Tarquinius Prīscus per insidiās rēgnum occupāvit. Plūra bella fēliciter gessit, et multōs agrōs hostium finibus suis adiūnxit. Cloācās et mūrōs fēcit ; templum Iovī inchoāvit. Ā filiīs Ancī, quibus rēgnum ēripuerat, interfectus est.

Post hunc Servius Tullius, filius captīvī, rēgnāvit. Bene imperium administrāvit. Montēs trēs urbī adiūnxit. Prīmus omnium cēnsū ordināvit.

Servius ā filiā suā, Tulliā, et Tarquiniō Superbō, filiō eius rēgis, cui successerat, interfectus est.

Septimus rēx, Tarquinius Superbus, erat filius Tarquinī Prīscī. Templum Iovis in Capitōliō aedificāvit. Propter multās iniūriās Lūcius Brūtus et aliī cīvēs populō persuāsērunt ut eum ex urbe ēiceret et portās clauderet. Exercitus quoque eum reliquit. Fūgit itaque cum uxōre et liberīs suīs.

Ita Rōmae septem rēgēs rēgnāvērunt annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā trēs.

SUMMARY

PARADIGMS

NOUNS

FIRST DECLENSION

Domina, f., *lady*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	domina	dominae
<i>Gen.</i>	dominae	dominārum
<i>Dat.</i>	dominae	dominis
<i>Acc.</i>	dominam	dominās
<i>Abl.</i>	dominā	dominis

Filia and **dea** have **-ābus** in the dative and ablative plural.

SECOND DECLENSION

Dominus, m., <i>master</i>	Filius, m., <i>son</i>	Puer, m., <i>boy</i>	Ager, m., <i>field</i>
--------------------------------------	----------------------------------	--------------------------------	----------------------------------

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	dominus	filius	puer	ager
<i>Gen.</i>	dominī	fili	puerī	agri
<i>Dat.</i>	dominō	filiō	puerō	agrō
<i>Acc.</i>	dominum	filiū	puerum	agrum
<i>Abl.</i>	dominō	filiō	puerō	agrō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	dominī	filiī	puerī	agri
<i>Gen.</i>	dominōrum	filiōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	dominis	filiīs	puerīs	agris
<i>Acc.</i>	dominōs	filiōs	puerōs	agrōs
<i>Abl.</i>	dominis	filiīs	puerīs	agris

Oppidum, n., town Praesidium, n., garrison**SINGULAR**

<i>Nom.</i>	oppidum	praesidium
<i>Gen.</i>	oppidi	praesidi
<i>Dat.</i>	oppidō	praesidiō
<i>Acc.</i>	oppidum	praesidium
<i>Abl.</i>	oppidō	praesidiō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	oppida	praesidia
<i>Gen.</i>	oppidōrum	praesidiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	oppidīs	praesidiīs
<i>Acc.</i>	oppida	praesidia
<i>Abl.</i>	oppidīs	praesidiīs

Nouns in **-us** of this declension have the termination **-e** in the vocative singular, as **domine**.

Proper names in **-ius**, and **filius**, end in **-i** in the vocative singular.

THIRD DECLENSION*Labial Stem***Princeps, m., chief****SINGULAR****PLURAL**

<i>Nom.</i>	princeps	principēs
<i>Gen.</i>	principis	principum
<i>Dat.</i>	principi	principibus
<i>Acc.</i>	principem	principēs
<i>Abl.</i>	principe	principibus

*Lingual Stems***Eques, m.,**
*horseman***Virtūs, f., man-**
*liness, valor***Caput, n.,**
head

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	eques	virtūs	caput
<i>Gen.</i>	equitis	virtūtis	capitis
<i>Dat.</i>	equiti	virtūti	capiti
<i>Acc.</i>	equitem	virtūtem	caput
<i>Abl.</i>	equite	virtūte	capite

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	equitēs	virtūtēs	capita
<i>Gen.</i>	equitum	virtūtum	capitum
<i>Dat.</i>	equitibus	virtutibus	capitibus
<i>Acc.</i>	equitēs	virtūtēs	capita
<i>Abl.</i>	equitibus	virtutibus	capitibus

*Palatal Stems***Rēx, m., king****Iūdex, m., judge**

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	iūdex
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	iūdicis
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgi	iūdicī
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	iūdicem
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	iūdice

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	iūdicēs
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	iūdicum
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	iūdicibus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	iūdicēs
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	iūdicibus

*Liquid Stems*Cōnsul, m.,
*consul*Victor, m.,
*victor*Pater, m.,
father

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsul	victor	pater
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsulis	victōris	patris
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsulī	victōrī	patri
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsulem	victōrem	patrem
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsule	victōre	patre

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsulēs	victōrēs	patrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsulum	victōrum	patrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsulibus	victōribus	patribus
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsulēs	victōrēs	patrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsulibus	victōribus	patribus

Multitūdō, f.,
*great number*Nātiō, f.,
*race, nation*Flūmen, n.,
river

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	multitūdō	nātiō	flūmen
<i>Gen.</i>	multitūdinis	nātiōnis	flūminis
<i>Dat.</i>	multitūdini	nātiōnī	flūminī
<i>Acc.</i>	multitūdinem	nātiōnem	flūmen
<i>Abl.</i>	multitūdine	nātiōne	flūmine

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	multitūdinēs	nātiōnēs	flūmina
<i>Gen.</i>	multitūdinum	nātiōnum	flūminum
<i>Dat.</i>	multitūdinibus	nātiōnibus	flūminibus
<i>Acc.</i>	multitūdinēs	nātiōnēs	flūmina
<i>Abl.</i>	multitūdinibus	nātiōnibus	flūminibus

*Sibilant Stems***Tempus**, n., *time***Opus**, n., *work, task*

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	tempus	opus
<i>Gen.</i>	temporis	operis
<i>Dat.</i>	temporī	operī
<i>Acc.</i>	tempus	opus
<i>Abl.</i>	tempore	opere

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	tempora	opera
<i>Gen.</i>	temporum	operum
<i>Dat.</i>	temporibus	operibus
<i>Acc.</i>	tempora	opera
<i>Abl.</i>	temporibus	operibus

*Stems in i***Hostis**, m.,
*enemy***Nūbēs**, f.,
*cloud***Ignis**, m.,
fire

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	hostis	nūbēs	ignis
<i>Gen.</i>	hostis	nūbis	ignis
<i>Dat.</i>	hostī	nūbī	ignī
<i>Acc.</i>	hostem	nūbem	ignem
<i>Abl.</i>	hoste	nūbe	igne, -ī

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	hostēs	nūbēs	ignēs
<i>Gen.</i>	hostium	nūbium	ignium
<i>Dat.</i>	hostibus	nūbibus	ignibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hostis, -ēs	nūbīs, -ēs	ignīs, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	hostibus	nūbibus	ignibus

	Cliēns, m., <i>retainer,</i> <i>client</i>	Urbs, f., <i>city</i>	Mare, n., <i>sea</i>	Animal, n., <i>animal</i>
SINGULAR				
<i>Nom.</i>	cliēns	urbs	mare	animal
<i>Gen.</i>	clientis	urbis	maris	animālis
<i>Dat.</i>	clientī	urbī	marī	animālī
<i>Acc.</i>	clientem	urbem	mare	animal
<i>Abl.</i>	cliente	urbe	marī	animālī
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	clientēs	urbēs	maria	animālia
<i>Gen.</i>	clientium	urbium	marium	animālium
<i>Dat.</i>	clientibus	urbibus	maribus	animālibus
<i>Acc.</i>	clientīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs	maria	animālia
<i>Abl.</i>	clientibus	urbibus	maribus	animālibus

FOURTH DECLENSION

	Exercitus, m., <i>army</i>	Manus, f., <i>hand</i>	Cornū, n., <i>horn</i>
SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	exercitus	manus	cornū
<i>Gen.</i>	exercitūs	manūs	cornūs
<i>Dat.</i>	exercitui (-ū)	manui (-ū)	cornū
<i>Acc.</i>	exercitum	manum	cornū
<i>Abl.</i>	exercitū	manū	cornū
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	exercitūs	manūs	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	exercituum	manuum	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	exercitibus	manibus	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	exercitūs	manūs	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	exercitibus	manibus	cornibus

FIFTH DECLENSION

Diēs, m., *day*Rēs, f., *thing, affair*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

IRREGULAR DECLENSION

Vis, f., *force*Iter, n., *march, journey*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	vis	virēs	iter	itinera
<i>Gen.</i>	vis (rare)	virium	itineris	itinerum
<i>Dat.</i>	vi (rare)	viribus	itineri	itineribus
<i>Acc.</i>	vim	virīs, -ēs	iter	itinera
<i>Abl.</i>	vi	viribus	itinere	itineribus

Deus, m., *god*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	deus	dei, dii, di
<i>Gen.</i>	dei	deorum, deum
<i>Dat.</i>	deō	deīs, diīs, diīs
<i>Acc.</i>	deum	deōs
<i>Abl.</i>	deō	deīs, diīs, diīs

Domus, f., *house, home*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	domus	domūs
<i>Gen.</i>	domūs, -i	domuum, -ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	domui, -ō	domibus
<i>Acc.</i>	domum	domōs, -ūs
<i>Abl.</i>	domō, -ū	domibus

ADJECTIVES

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Longus, long

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	longus	longa	longum
<i>Gen.</i>	longī	longae	longī
<i>Dat.</i>	longō	longae	longō
<i>Acc.</i>	longum	longam	longum
<i>Abl.</i>	longō	longā	longō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	longī	longae	longa
<i>Gen.</i>	longōrum	longārum	longōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	longīs	longīs	longīs
<i>Acc.</i>	longōs	longās	longa
<i>Abl.</i>	longīs	longīs	longīs

Liber, free

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

Pulcher, beautiful

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

THIRD DECLENSION — THREE ENDINGS

Ācer, sharp, keen

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācris, -ēs	ācris, -ēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

THIRD DECLENSION — TWO ENDINGS

Fortis, brave

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
<i>Gen.</i>	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
<i>Dat.</i>	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortem	forte	fortis, -ēs	fortia
<i>Abl.</i>	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

THIRD DECLENSION — ONE ENDING

Audāx, bold

SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
<i>Gen.</i>	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
<i>Dat.</i>	audāci	audāci	audācibus	audācibus
<i>Acc.</i>	audācem	audāx	audācis, -ēs	audācia
<i>Abl.</i>	audāci, -e	audāci, -e	audācibus	audācibus

THIRD DECLENSION — CONSONANT STEM

Vetus, old

SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
<i>Gen.</i>	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
<i>Dat.</i>	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
<i>Acc.</i>	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
<i>Abl.</i>	vetere, -ī	vetere, -ī	veteribus	veteribus

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

Alius, another

	SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>		<i>alii</i>	<i>aliae</i>	<i>alia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>alius</i>		<i>aliōrum</i>	<i>aliārum</i>	<i>aliōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>		<i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>alium</i>	<i>aliam</i>	<i>aliud</i>		<i>aliōs</i>	<i>aliās</i>	<i>alia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>		<i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>	<i>aliīs</i>

Ūnus, one

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE			COMPARATIVE	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
cārus	-a	-um	cārior	cārius
līber	-era	-erum	līberior	līberius
pulcher	-ra	-rum	pulchrior	pulchrius
audāx	audāx	audāx	audācior	audācius
fortis	fortis	forte	fortior	fortius
celer	celeris	celere	celerior	celerius

SUPERLATIVE

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
cārissimus	-a	-um	audācissimus	-a	-um
liberrimus	-a	-um	fortissimus	-a	-um
pulcherrimus	-a	-um	celerrimus	-a	-um

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius, <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um, <i>best</i>
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, -a, -um, <i>worst</i>
māgnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i>	māior, māius, <i>greater</i>	māximus, -a, -um, <i>greatest</i>
multus, -a, -um, <i>much; pl., many</i>	—, plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimus, -a, -um, <i>most; pl., very many</i>

parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus, <i>smaller</i>	minimus, -a, -um, <i>smallest</i>
exterus, -a, -um, <i>outward</i>	exterior, exterius, <i>outer</i>	{ extrēmus, -a, -um, extimus, -a, -um, <i>outermost, last</i>
inferus, -a, -um, <i>below, low</i>	inferior, inferius, <i>lower</i>	{ infimus, -a, -um, imus, -a, -um, <i>lowest</i>
posterus, -a, -um, <i>following</i>	posterior, posterius, <i>later</i>	{ postrēmus, -a, -um postumus, -a, -um, <i>last</i>
superus, -a, -um, <i>above</i>	superior, superius, <i>higher</i>	{ suprēmus, -a, -um, summus, -a, -um, <i>highest</i>
facilis, -e, easy difficilis, -e, <i>difficult</i>	facilior, facilius, difficilior, difficilius,	facillimus, -a, -um, difficillimus, -a, -um,
similis, -e, similar dissimilis, -e, un- <i>like, dissimilar</i>	similior, similius, dissimilior, dis- similius,	simillimus, -a, -um, dissimillimus, -a, -um,
humilis, -e, low gracilis, -e, slender	humilior, humilius, gracilior, gracilius,	humillimus, -a, -um, gracillimus, -a, -um,
idōneus, -a, -um, <i>suitable</i>	magis idōneus, -a, -um,	māximē idōneus, -a, -um

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

Cārior, dearer

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	cārior	cārius	cāriōrēs	cāriōra
<i>Gen.</i>	cāriōris	cāriōris	cāriōrum	cāriōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cāriōrī	cāriōrī	cāriōribus	cāriōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	cāriōrem	cārius	cāriōrēs	cāriōra
<i>Abl.</i>	cāriōre	cāriōre	cāriōribus	cāriōribus

Plūs, more

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> ———	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i> ———	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i> ———	———	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i> ———	plūs	plūrīs, -ēs	plūra
<i>Abl.</i> ———	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārē (<i>cārus</i>), <i>dearly</i>	cārius	cārissimē
liberē (<i>liber</i>), <i>freely</i>	liberius	liberrimē
pulchrē (<i>pulcher</i>), <i>beautifully</i>	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
audācter (<i>audāx</i>), <i>boldly</i>	audācius	audācissimē
fortiter (<i>fortis</i>), <i>bravely</i>	fortius	fortissimē
celeriter (<i>celer</i>), <i>swiftly</i>	celerius	celerrimē
facile (<i>facilis</i>), <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene (<i>bonus</i>), <i>well</i>	melius , <i>better</i>	optimē , <i>best</i>
male (<i>malus</i>), <i>ill</i>	peius , <i>worse</i>	pessimē , <i>worst</i>
māgnopere (<i>māgnus</i>), <i>greatly</i>	magis , <i>more</i>	māximē , <i>most</i>
multum (<i>multus</i>), <i>much</i>	plūs , <i>more</i>	plūrium , <i>most</i>
parum (<i>parvus</i>), <i>little</i>	minus , <i>less</i>	minimē , <i>least</i>
diū , <i>long, a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe , <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē

NUMERALS

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1. ūnus , -a, -um	primus , -a, -um
2. duo , <i>duae</i> , duo	secundus
3. trēs , tria	tertius

CARDINALS

4. quattuor
5. quinque
6. sex
7. septem
8. octō
9. novem
10. decem
11. undecim
12. duodecim
13. tredecim
14. quattuordecim
15. quindecim
16. sēdecim
17. septendecim
18. duodēvigintī
19. undēvigintī
20. vigintī
21. vigintī ūnus, or
ūnus et vigintī
29. undētrīgintā
30. trīgintā
40. quadrāgintā
50. quinquāgintā
60. sexāgintā
70. septuāgintā
80. octōgintā
90. nōnāgintā
100. centum
101. centum (et) ūnus
121. centum (et) vigintī ūnus
200. ducentī, -ae, -a
300. trecentī
400. quadrigentī
500. quingentī

ORDINALS

- quārtus
- quīntus
- sextus
- septimus
- octāvus
- nōnus
- decimus
- undecimus
- duodecimus
- tertius decimus
- quārtus decimus
- quīntus decimus
- sextus decimus
- septimus decimus
- duodēvicēsīmus
- undēvicēsīmus
- vicēsīmus
- undētrīcēsīmus
- trīcēsīmus
- quadrāgēsīmus
- quīnquāgēsīmus
- sexāgēsīmus
- septuāgēsīmus
- octōgēsīmus
- nōnāgēsīmus
- centēsīmus
- centēsīmus (et) prīmus
- centēsīmus (et) vicēsīmus prīmus
- ducentēsīmus
- trecentēsīmus
- quadrigentēsīmus
- quingentēsīmus

600. sescenti	sescentēsimus
700. septingenti	septingentēsimus
800. octingenti	octingentēsimus
900. nōngenti	nōngentēsimus
1000. mille	millēsimus
2000. duo mīlia	bis millēsimus

Declension of duo, two, trēs, three, and mille, a thousand

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. & Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	triūm	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trīs, trēs	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	mille	mīlia
<i>Gen.</i>	mille	mīlium
<i>Dat.</i>	mille	mīlibus
<i>Acc.</i>	mille	mīlia
<i>Abl.</i>	mille	mīlibus

PRONOUNS

Personal

	<i>First Person</i>		<i>Second Person</i>		<i>Third Person (Re- flexive)</i>	
	Ego, I		Tū, you (thou)		Suī, of himself, etc.	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	nostrum (nostrī)	tuī	vestrum (vestrī)	suī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

Demonstrative

Hic, this (here)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

Iste, that (of yours)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
<i>Gen.</i>	istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

Ille, that (yonder)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illis	illis	illis
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

Ipsē (intensive), self

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

Is, this, that, he

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

Idem, same

	SINGULAR		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	idem	eadem	idem
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

	PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	iīdem, eīdem	eadem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	iīsdem, eīsdem	iīsdem, eīsdem	iīsdem, eīsdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i>	iīsdem, eīsdem	iīsdem, eīsdem	iīsdem, eīsdem

*Interrogative**Quis, who?*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Qui, quae, quod, which? what? is the interrogative adjective. It is declined like the relative pronoun.

Relative

Qui, who, which, that

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quorum	quarum	quorum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quos	quas	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quod	quā	quod	quibus	quibus	quibus

Indefinite

Aliquis, some one

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis	aliquid
<i>Gen.</i>	alicuius	alicuius
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquid
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquo	aliquo

PLURAL

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	aliquorum	aliquarum	aliquorum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquos	aliquas	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

Aliqui, aliqua, aliquod, some, is the adjective.

Quidam, a certain one**SINGULAR**

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quidam	quaedam	quiddam
<i>Gen.</i>	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
<i>Acc.</i>	quendam	quandam	quiddam
<i>Abl.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	quidam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
<i>Dat.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
<i>Acc.</i>	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

Quidam, quaedam, quoddam, a certain, is the adjective.

REGULAR VERBS**FIRST CONJUGATION**

Principal Parts : portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus

Stems : portā-, portāv-, portāt-

Active Voice**Passive Voice****Present Indicative**

I carry, am carrying, etc.

I am carried, etc.

portō	portāmus	portor	portāmur
portās	portātis	portāris, -re	portāmini
portat	portant	portātur	portantur

Imperfect Indicative

I was carrying, carried, etc.

I was carried, etc.

portābam	portābāmus	portābar	portābāmur
portābās	portābātis	portābāris, -re	portābāmini
portābat	portābant	portābātur	portābantur

Future Indicative

I shall carry, etc.

portābō	portābimus
portābis	portābitis
portābit	portābunt

I shall be carried, etc.

portābor	portābimur
portāberis, -re	portābimini
portābitur	portābuntur

Perfect Indicative

I carried, have carried, did carry, etc.

portāvi	portāvimus
portāvisti	portāvistis
portāvit	portāverunt, -ēre

I have been carried, was carried, etc.

portātus	{ sum	portāti	{ sumus
-a, -um	{ es	-ae, -a	{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

Pluperfect Indicative

I had carried, etc.

portāveram	portāverāmus
portāverās	portāverātis
portāverat	portāverant

I had been carried, etc.

portātus	{ eram	portāti	{ erāmus
-a, -um	{ erās	-ae, -a	{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

Future Perfect Indicative

I shall have carried, etc.

portāverō	portāverimus
portāveris	portāveritis
portāverit	portāverint

I shall have been carried, etc.

portātus	{ erō	portāti	{ erimus
-a, -um	{ eris	-ae, -a	{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

Present Subjunctive

portem	portēmus
portēs	portētis
portet	portent

porter	portēmur
portēris, -re	portēmini
portētur	portentur

Imperfect Subjunctive

portārem	portārēmus
portārēs	portārētis
portāret	portārent

portārer	portārēmur
portārēris, -re	portārēmini
portārētur	portārentur

Perfect Subjunctive

portāverim	portāverimus	portātus { -a, -um { sim sis sit	portāti { -ae, -a { simus sitis sint
portāveris	portāveritis		
portāverit	portāverint		

Pluperfect Subjunctive

portāvissē	portāvissēmus	portātus { -a, -um { essem essēs esset	portāti { -ae, -a { essēmus essētis essent
portāvissēs	portāvissētis		
portāvisset	portāvissent		

Present Imperative

portā , carry thou	portāre , be thou carried
portāte , carry ye	portāmini , be ye carried

Future Imperative

portātō , thou shalt carry	portātor , thou shalt be carried
portātō , he shall carry	portātor , he shall be carried
portātōte , you shall carry	—
portantō , they shall carry	portantor , they shall be carried

Infinitives

<i>Pres.</i>	portāre , to carry	portāri , to be carried
<i>Perf.</i>	portāvisse , to have carried	portātus, -a, -um esse , to have been carried
<i>Fut.</i>	portātūrus, -a, -um esse , to be about to carry	portātum iri , to be about to be carried

Participles

<i>Pres.</i>	portāns, -antis carrying	—
<i>Perf.</i>	—	portātus, -a, -um , having been carried, carried
<i>Fut.</i>	portātūrus, -a, -um , about to carry	portandus, -a, -um (gerundive), to be carried

	Gerund		Supine
<i>Nom.</i>	—	<i>Acc.</i>	portātum, to carry
<i>Gen.</i>	portandī, of carrying	<i>Abl.</i>	portātū, to carry, in the carrying
<i>Dat.</i>	portandō, for carrying		
<i>Acc.</i>	portandum, carrying		
<i>Abl.</i>	portandō, by carrying		

SECOND CONJUGATION

Principal Parts : **monēō, monēre, monui, monitus**Stems : **monē-, monu-, monit-**

Active Voice

Passive Voice

Present Indicative

*I advise, am advising, etc.**I am advised, etc.*

monēō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris, -re	monēmini
monet	monent	monētur	monentur

Imperfect Indicative

*I was advising, advised, etc.**I was advised, etc.*

monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris, -re	monēbāmini
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur

Future Indicative

*I shall advise, etc.**I shall be advised, etc.*

monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis, -re	monēbimini
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur

Perfect Indicative

*I advised, have advised, did advise, etc.**I have been advised, was advised, etc.*

monui	monuimus	monitus	{ sum	moniti	{ sumus
monuisti	monuistis	monitus	{ es	moniti	{ estis
monuit	monuērunt, -ēre	-a, -um	{ est	-ae, -a	{ sunt

Pluperfect Indicative

*I had advised, etc.**I had been advised, etc.*

monueram	monuerāmus	monitus -a, -um	{ eram erās erat	moniti -ae, -a	{ erāmus erātis erant
monuerās	monuerātis				
monuerat	monuerant				

Future Perfect Indicative

*I shall have advised, etc.**I shall have been advised, etc.*

monuerō	monuerimus	monitus -a, -um	{ erō eris erit	moniti -ae, -a	{ erimus eritis erunt
monueris	monueritis				
monuerit	monuerint				

Present Subjunctive

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris, -re	moneāmini
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

Imperfect Subjunctive

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris, -re	monērēmini
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

Perfect Subjunctive

monuerim	monuerimus	monitus -a, -um	{ sim sis sit	moniti -ae, -a	{ simus sitis sint
monueris	monueritis				
monuerit	monuerint				

Pluperfect Subjunctive

monuissē	monuissēmus	monitus -a, -um	{ essem essēs esset	moniti -ae, -a	{ essēmus essētis essent
monuissēs	monuissētis				
monuisset	monuissent				

Present Imperative

monē, *advise thou, etc.***monēre**, *be thou advised, etc.***monēte**, *advise ye, etc.***monēmini**, *be ye advised, etc.*

Future Imperative

monētō, *thou shalt advise, etc.* **monētor**, *thou shalt be advised, etc.***monētō**, *he shall advise, etc.* **monētor**, *he shall be advised, etc.***monētōte**, *you shall advise.* —**monentō**, *they shall advise.* **monentor**, *they shall be advised, etc.*

Infinitives

Pres. **monēre**, *to advise, etc.* **monēri**, *to be advised, etc.**Perf.* **monuisse**, *to have advised, etc.* **monitus, -a, -um esse**, *to have been advised, etc.**Fut.* **monitūrus, -a, -um** **monitum iri**, *to be about to be advised, etc.*
esse, *to be about to advise, etc.*

Participles

Pres. **monēns, -entis, ad-** —
*vising, etc.**Perf.* — **monitus, -a, -um**, *having been advised, etc.**Fut.* **monitūrus, -a, -um**, **monendus, -a, -um** (*gerundive*),
about to advise, etc. *to be advised, etc.*

Gerund

Nom. —*Gen.* **monendī**, *of advising**Dat.* **monendō**, *for advising, etc.**Acc.* **monendum**, *advising, etc.**Abl.* **monendō**, *by advising, etc.*

Supine

Acc. **monitum**, *to advise, etc.**Abl.* **monitū**, *to advise, in the advising, etc.*

THIRD CONJUGATION

Principal Parts : dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus

Stems : dūce-, dūx-, duct-

Active Voice

Passive Voice

Present Indicative

*I lead, am leading, do lead, etc.**I am led, etc.*

dūcō dūcimus
dūcis dūcitis
dūcit dūcunt

dūcor dūcimur
dūceris, -re dūcimini
dūcitur dūcuntur

Imperfect Indicative

*I was leading, led, etc.**I was led, etc.*

dūcēbam dūcēbāmus
dūcēbās dūcēbātis
dūcēbat dūcēbant

dūcēbar dūcēbāmur
dūcēbāris, -re dūcēbāmini
dūcēbātur dūcēbantur

Future Indicative

*I shall lead, etc.**I shall be led, etc.*

dūcam dūcēmus
dūcēs dūcētis
dūcet dūcent

dūcar dūcēmur
dūcēris, -re dūcēmini
dūcētur dūcentur

Perfect Indicative

*I led, have led, did lead, etc.**I have been led, was led, etc.*

dūxī dūximus
dūxistī dūxistis
dūxit dūxērunt, -ēre

ductus, { sum
 { es ductī, { sumus
 { est -ae, -a { estis
 sunt

Pluperfect Indicative

*I had led, etc.**I had been led, etc.*

dūxeram dūxerāmus
dūxerās dūxerātis
dūxerat dūxerant

ductus, { eram ductī, { erāmus
 { erās -ae, -a { erātis
 { erat erant

Future Perfect Indicative

I shall have led, etc.

dūxerō	dūxerimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis
dūxerit	dūxerint

I shall have been led, etc.

ductus,	{ erō	ductī,	{ erimus
-a, -um	{ eris	-ae, -a	{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

Present Subjunctive

dūcam	dūcāmus	dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcās	dūcātis	dūcāris, -re	dūcāminī
dūcat	dūcant	dūcātur	dūcantur

Imperfect Subjunctive

dūcerem	dūcerēmus	dūcerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerēs	dūcerētis	dūcerēris, -re	dūcerēminī
dūceret	dūcerent	dūcerētur	dūcerentur

Perfect Subjunctive

dūxerim	dūxerimus	ductus,	{ sim	ductī,	{ simus
dūxeris	dūxeritis	-a, -um	{ sis	-ae, -a	{ sitis
dūxerit	dūxerint		{ sit		{ sint

Pluperfect Subjunctive

dūxissem	dūxissemus	ductus,	{ essem	ductī,	{ essemus
dūxisse	dūxissetis	-a, -um	{ essēs	-ae, -a	{ essētis
dūxisset	dūxisissent		{ esset		{ essent

Present Imperative

dūc(e), lead thou	dūcere, be thou led
dūcite, lead ye	dūcimini, be ye led

Future Imperative

dūcitō, thou shalt lead	dūcitor, thou shalt be led
dūcitō, he shall lead	dūcitor, he shall be led
dūcitōte, you shall lead	—
dūcuntō, they shall lead	dūcuntor, they shall be led

Infinitives

<i>Pres.</i>	dūcere, to lead	dūcī, to be led
<i>Perf.</i>	dūxisse, to have led	ductus, -a, -um esse, to have been led
<i>Fut.</i>	ductūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to lead	ductum iri, to be about to be led

Participles

<i>Pres.</i>	dūcēns, -entis, leading	—
<i>Perf.</i>	—	ductus, -a, -um, having been led, led
<i>Fut.</i>	ductūrus, -a, -um, about to lead	dūcendus, -a, -um (gerundive), to be led

Gerund

<i>Nom.</i>	—
<i>Gen.</i>	dūcendī, of leading
<i>Dat.</i>	dūcendō, for leading
<i>Acc.</i>	dūcendum, leading
<i>Abl.</i>	dūcendō, by leading

Supine

<i>Acc.</i>	ductum, to lead
<i>Abl.</i>	ductū, to lead, in the leading

THIRD CONJUGATION — VERBS IN -IŌ

Principal Parts: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**Stems: **cape-, cēp-, capt-**

Active Voice

Passive Voice

Present Indicative

*I take, am taking, do
take, etc.**I am taken, etc.*

capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis, -re	capimini
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

Imperfect Indicative

*I was taking, took, did
take, etc.*

I was taken, etc.

capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris, -re	capiēbāmini
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur

Future Indicative

I shall take, etc.

I shall be taken, etc.

capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris, -re	capiēmini
capiet	capiēt	capiētur	capiēntur

Perfect Indicative

*I took, have taken, did
take, etc.*

*I have been taken, was
taken, etc.*

cēpī, cēpistī, etc.

captus, -a, -um sum, etc.

Pluperfect Indicative

I had taken, etc.

I had been taken, etc.

cēperam, cēperās, etc.

captus, -a, -um eram, etc.

Future Perfect Indicative

I shall have taken, etc.

I shall have been taken, etc.

cēperō, cēperis, etc.

captus, -a, -um erō, etc.

Present Subjunctive

capiam, capiās, etc.

capiar, capiāris, -re, etc.

Imperfect Subjunctive

caperem, caperēs, etc.

caperer, caperēris, -re, etc.

Perfect Subjunctive

cēperim, cēperis, etc.

captus, -a, -um sim, etc.

Pluperfect Subjunctive

cēpīsem, cēpissēs, etc.

captus, -a, -um essem, etc.

Present Imperative

*Take thou, etc.*cape
capite*Be thou taken, etc.*capere
capimini

Future Imperative

*Thou shalt take, etc.*capitō
capitō
capitōte
capiuntō*Thou shalt be taken, etc.*capitor
capitor
——
capiuntor

Infinitives

*To take, etc.*Pres. capere
Perf. cēpisse
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um esse*To be taken, etc.*capi
captus, -a, -um esse
captum iri

Participles

*Taking, etc.*Pres. capiēns, -entis
Perf. ——
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um*Having been taken, taken, etc.*——
captus, -a, -um
capiendus, -a, -um (gerundive)

Gerund

Nom. ——
Gen. capiendī, of taking
Dat. capiendō, for taking
Acc. capiendum, taking
Abl. capiendō, by taking

Supine

Acc. captum, to take
Abl. captū, to take, in the taking

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Principal Parts : audiō, audire, audīvi, audītus

Stems : audī-, audīv-, audīt-

Active Voice

Passive Voice

Present Indicative

*I hear, am hearing, do
hear, etc.**I am heard, etc.*

audiō	audīmus	audior	audīmur
audīs	audītis	audīris, -re	audīmini
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur

Imperfect Indicative

*I was hearing, heard, etc.**I was heard, etc.*

audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris, -re	audiēbāmini
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

Future Indicative

*I shall hear, etc.**I shall be heard, etc.*

audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris, -re	audiēmini
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur

Perfect Indicative

*I heard, have heard, did
hear, etc.**I have been heard, was
heard, etc.*

audīvi	audīvimus	audītus, { -a, -um {	sum	audīti, { -ae, -a {	sumus
audīvistī	audīvistis		es		estis
audīvit	audīverunt, -ēre		est		sunt

Pluperfect Indicative

*I had heard, etc.**I had been heard, etc.*

audīveram	audīverāmus	audītus, { -a, -um	{ eram erās erat	audītī, { -ae, -a	{ erāmus erātis erant
audīverās	audīverātis				
audīverat	audīverant				

Future Perfect Indicative

*I shall have heard, etc.**I shall have been heard, etc.*

audīverō	audīverimus	audītus, { -a, -um	{ erō eris erit	audītī, { -ae, -a	{ erimus eritis erunt
audīveris	audīveritis				
audīverit	audīverint				

Present Subjunctive

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris, -re	audiāmini
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

Imperfect Subjunctive

audīrem	audirēmus	audīrer	audirēmur
audirēs	audirētis	audirēris, -re	audirēmini
audīret	audīrent	audirētur	audīrentur

Perfect Subjunctive

audīverim	audīverimus	audītus, { -a, -um	{ sim sis sit	audītī, { -ae, -a	{ simus sitis sint
audīveris	audīveritis				
audīverit	audīverint				

Pluperfect Subjunctive

audīvissem	audīvissemus	audītus, { -a, -um	{ essem essēs esset	audītī, { -ae, -a	{ essēmus essētis essent
audīvisse	audīvissetis				
audīvisset	audīvissent				

Present Imperative

audī, hear thou	audire, be thou heard
audīte, hear ye	audīmini, be ye heard

Future Imperative

audītō , <i>thou shalt hear</i>	auditor , <i>thou shalt be heard</i>
audītō , <i>he shall hear</i>	auditor , <i>he shall be heard</i>
audītōte , <i>ye shall hear</i>	—
audiuntō , <i>they shall hear</i>	audiuntor , <i>they shall be heard</i>

Infinitives

<i>Pres.</i>	audire , <i>to hear</i>	audiri , <i>to be heard</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	audivisse , <i>to have heard</i>	auditus, -a, -um esse , <i>to have been heard</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	audīturus, -a, -um esse , <i>to be about to hear</i>	auditum iri , <i>to be about to be heard</i>

Participles

<i>Pres.</i>	audiēns, -entis , <i>hearing</i>	—
<i>Perf.</i>	—	auditus, -a, -um , <i>having been heard, heard</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	audīturus, -a, -um , <i>about to hear</i>	audiendus, -a, -um (gerundive), <i>to be heard</i>

Gerund

<i>Nom.</i>	—
<i>Gen.</i>	audiendī , <i>of hearing</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	audiendō , <i>for hearing</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	audiendum , <i>hearing</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	audiendō , <i>by hearing</i>

Supine

<i>Acc.</i>	audītum , <i>to hear</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	audītū , <i>to hear, in the hearing</i>

IRREGULAR VERBS

Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*Stems: *es-, fu-, fut-*

Indicative		Subjunctive	
<i>I am, etc.</i>		<i>Present</i>	
<i>sum</i>	<i>sumus</i>	<i>sim</i>	<i>simus</i>
<i>es</i>	<i>estis</i>	<i>sis</i>	<i>sitis</i>
<i>est</i>	<i>sunt</i>	<i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>
<i>I was, etc.</i>		<i>Imperfect</i>	
<i>eram</i>	<i>erāmus</i>	<i>essem</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
<i>erās</i>	<i>erātis</i>	<i>essēs</i>	<i>essētis</i>
<i>erat</i>	<i>erant</i>	<i>esset</i>	<i>essent</i>
<i>I shall be, etc.</i>		<i>Future</i>	
<i>erō</i>	<i>erimus</i>		
<i>eris</i>	<i>eritis</i>		
<i>erit</i>	<i>erunt</i>		
<i>I have been, was, etc.</i>		<i>Perfect</i>	
<i>fui</i>	<i>fuimus</i>	<i>fuerim</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>
<i>fuisti</i>	<i>fuistis</i>	<i>fueris</i>	<i>fueritis</i>
<i>fuit</i>	<i>fuērunt, -ēre</i>	<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>
<i>I had been, etc.</i>		<i>Pluperfect</i>	
<i>fueram</i>	<i>fuerāmus</i>	<i>fuissem</i>	<i>fuissēmus</i>
<i>fuerās</i>	<i>fuerātis</i>	<i>fuissēs</i>	<i>fuissētis</i>
<i>fuerat</i>	<i>fuerant</i>	<i>fuisset</i>	<i>fuissent</i>
<i>I shall have been, etc.</i>		<i>Future Perfect</i>	
<i>fuerō</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>		
<i>fueris</i>	<i>fueritis</i>		
<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>		

Present Imperative*es, be thou**este, be ye***Future Imperative***estō, thou shalt be**estōte, ye shall be**estō, he shall be**suntō, they shall be***Infinitives***Pres. esse, to be**Perf. fuisse, to have been**Fut. futūrus, -a, -um esse, or fore, to be about to be***Participle***Fut. futūrus, -a, -um, about to be***Principal Parts :** possum, posse, potui, —**Indicative****Subjunctive****Present***I am able, can, etc.***possum****possumus****possim****possimus****potes****potestis****possis****possitis****potest****possunt****possit****possint****Imperfect***I was able, could, etc.***poteram****poterāmus****possem****possēmus****poterās****poterātis****possēs****possētis****poterat****poterant****posset****possent****Future***I shall be able, etc.***poterō****poterimus****poteris****poteritis****poterit****poterunt**

Perfect

I have been able, etc.

potui	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
potuisti	potuistis	potueris	potueritis
potuit	potuerunt, -ère	potuerit	potuerint

Pluperfect

I had been able, etc.

potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
potuerās	potuerātis	potuissēs	potuissētis
potuerat	potuerant	potuisset	potuissent

Future Perfect

I shall have been able, etc.

potuerō	potuerimus
potueris	potueritis
potuerit	potuerint

Infinitives

Pres. posse, to be able *Perf. potuisse, to have been able*

Participle

Pres. potēns, -entis (used as an adjective), powerful

Principal Parts { *volō, velle, volui, —, be willing, will, wish*
nōlō, nolle, nolui, —, be unwilling, will not
mālō, malle, mālui, —, be more willing, prefer

Present Indicative

volō	volumus	nōlō	nolumus	mālō	mālumus
vīs	vultis	nōn vīs	nōn vultis	māvīs	māvultis
vult	volunt	nōn vult	nōlunt	māvult	mālunt

Imperfect Indicative

volēbam, etc. *nōlēbam, etc.* *mālēbam, etc.*

Future Indicative

volam, volēs, etc. *nōlam, nōlēs, etc.* *mālam, mālēs, etc.*

Perfect Indicative

volui, etc.	nolui, etc.	malui, etc.
--------------------	--------------------	--------------------

Pluperfect Indicative

volueram, etc.	nolueram, etc.	malueram, etc.
-----------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------

Future Perfect Indicative

voluerō, etc.	noluerō, etc.	maluerō, etc.
----------------------	----------------------	----------------------

Present Subjunctive

velim, velis, etc.	nolim, nolis, etc.	malim, malis, etc.
---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------

Imperfect Subjunctive

vellem, etc.	nollem, etc.	mallem, etc.
---------------------	---------------------	---------------------

Perfect Subjunctive

voluerim, etc.	noluerim, etc.	maluerim, etc.
-----------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------

Pluperfect Subjunctive

voluissem, etc.	noluissem, etc.	maluissem, etc.
------------------------	------------------------	------------------------

Present Imperative

noli	nolite
-------------	---------------

Future Imperative

nolitō	nolitōte
nolitō	noluntō

Infinitives

<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nolle	malle
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	noluisse	maluisse

Participles

<i>Pres.</i>	volēns, -entis	nolēns, -entis	—
--------------	-----------------------	-----------------------	----------

Principal Parts : *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, carry*

Stems : *fer-, tul-, lāt-*

Active Voice

Passive Voice

Present Indicative

<i>ferō</i>	<i>ferimus</i>	<i>feror</i>	<i>ferimur</i>
<i>fers</i>	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferris, -re</i>	<i>ferimini</i>
<i>fert</i>	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>fertur</i>	<i>feruntur</i>

Imperfect Indicative

<i>ferēbam, etc.</i>	<i>ferēbar, etc.</i>
----------------------	----------------------

Future Indicative

<i>feram, ferēs, etc.</i>	<i>ferar, ferēris, -re, etc.</i>
---------------------------	----------------------------------

Perfect Indicative

<i>tulī, etc.</i>	<i>lātus, -a, -um sum, etc.</i>
-------------------	---------------------------------

Pluperfect Indicative

<i>tuleram, etc.</i>	<i>lātus, -a, -um eram, etc.</i>
----------------------	----------------------------------

Future Perfect Indicative

<i>tulerō, etc.</i>	<i>lātus, -a, -um erō, etc.</i>
---------------------	---------------------------------

Present Subjunctive

<i>feram, ferās, etc.</i>	<i>ferar, ferāris, -re, etc.</i>
---------------------------	----------------------------------

Imperfect Subjunctive

<i>ferrem, etc.</i>	<i>ferrer, etc.</i>
---------------------	---------------------

Perfect Subjunctive

<i>tulerim, etc.</i>	<i>lātus, -a, -um sim, etc.</i>
----------------------	---------------------------------

Pluperfect Subjunctive

tulissem, etc.

lātus, -a, -um essem, etc.

Present Imperative

fer

ferre

ferte

ferimini

Future Imperative

fertō

fertor

fertō

fertor

fertōte

—

feruntō

feruntor

Infinitives*Pres.* ferre

ferri

Perf. tulisse

lātus, -a, -um esse

Fut. lātūrus, -a, -um esse

lātum iri

Participles*Pres.* ferēns, -entis

—

Perf. —

lātus, -a, -um

Fut. lātūrus, -a, -um

ferendus, -a, -um (gerundive)

Gerund*Nom.* —*Gen.* ferendī*Dat.* ferendō*Acc.* ferendum*Abl.* ferendō**Supine***Acc.* lātum*Abl.* lātū

Principal Parts: *fiō, fieri, factus sum* (passive of *faciō*), *be made, become, happen*

Indicative

Subjunctive

Present

<i>fiō</i>	<i>finus</i>	<i>fiam</i>	<i>fiāmus</i>
<i>fis</i>	<i>fitis</i>	<i>fiās</i>	<i>fiātis</i>
<i>fit</i>	<i>fiunt</i>	<i>fiat</i>	<i>fiant</i>

Imperfect

<i>fiēbam, etc.</i>	<i>fierem, etc.</i>
---------------------	---------------------

Future

fiam, etc.

Perfect

<i>factus, -a, -um sum, etc.</i>	<i>factus, -a, -um sim, etc.</i>
----------------------------------	----------------------------------

Pluperfect

<i>factus, -a, -um eram, etc.</i>	<i>factus, -a, -um essem, etc.</i>
-----------------------------------	------------------------------------

Future Perfect

factus, -a, -um erō, etc.

Present Imperative

<i>fi</i>	<i>fite</i>
-----------	-------------

Infinitives

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fieri</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>factus, -a, -um esse</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>factum iri</i>

Participles

<i>Perf.</i>	<i>factus, -a, -um</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>faciendus, -a, -um</i> (gerundive)

Principal Parts : eō, ire, īi (īvi), itūrus, go

Stems : I-, I- or īv-, it-

Indicative

Subjunctive

Present

eō	īmus	eam	eāmus
is	ītis	eās	eātis
it	eunt	eat	eant

Imperfect

ībam, etc.	īrem, etc.
------------	------------

Future

ībō, etc.

Perfect

īi (īvi)	ierim (īverim)
----------	----------------

Pluperfect

ieram (īveram)	issem (īvissem)
----------------	-----------------

Future Perfect

ierō (īverō)

Present Imperative

I	ite
---	-----

Future

itō	itōte
itō	euntō

Infinitives

Participles

<i>Pres.</i>	ire	<i>Pres.</i>	iēns, euntis
<i>Perf.</i>	isse (īvisse)	<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus, -a, -um
<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus, -a, -um esse	<i>Ger.</i>	eundum

Gerund		Supine	
<i>Nom.</i>	—		
<i>Gen.</i>	eundi	<i>Acc.</i>	itum
<i>Dat.</i>	eundō	<i>Abl.</i>	itū
<i>Acc.</i>	eundum		
<i>Abl.</i>	eundō		

DEPONENT VERBS

Principal Parts	1st Conj. :	hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, <i>urge, encourage</i>
	2d Conj. :	vereor, verērī, veritus sum, <i>fear, be afraid</i>
	3d Conj. :	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, <i>follow</i>
	4th Conj. :	potior, potīrī, potītus sum, <i>get possession of</i>

Present Indicative

hortor	hortāmur	vereor	verēmur
hortāris, -re	hortāminī	verēris, -re	verēminī
hortātur	hortantur	verētur	verentur
sequor	sequimur	potior	potīmur
sequeris, -re	sequiminī	potīris, -re	potīminī
sequitur	sequuntur	potītur	potiuntur

Imperfect Indicative

hortābar, etc.	verēbar, etc.	sequēbar, etc.	potiēbar, etc.
----------------	---------------	----------------	----------------

Future Indicative

hortābor, etc.	verēbor, etc.	sequar, etc.	potiar, etc.
----------------	---------------	--------------	--------------

Perfect Indicative

hortātus, -a, -um sum, etc.	veritus, -a, -um sum, etc.	secūtus, -a, -um sum, etc.	potītus, -a, -um sum, etc.
-----------------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------------	-------------------------------

Pluperfect Indicative

hortātus, -a, -um eram, etc.	veritus, -a, -um eram, etc.	secūtus, -a, -um eram, etc.	potitus, -a, -um eram, etc.
------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--------------------------------

Future Perfect Indicative

hortātus, -a, -um erō, etc.	veritus, -a, -um erō, etc.	secūtus, -a, -um erō, etc.	potitus, -a, -um erō, etc.
--------------------------------	-------------------------------	-------------------------------	-------------------------------

Present Subjunctive

horter, etc.	verear, etc.	sequar, etc.	potiar, etc.
--------------	--------------	--------------	--------------

Imperfect Subjunctive

hortārer, etc.	verērer, etc.	sequerer, etc.	potirer, etc.
----------------	---------------	----------------	---------------

Perfect Subjunctive

hortātus, -a, -um sim, etc.	veritus, -a, -um sim, etc.	secūtus, -a, -um sim, etc.	potitus, -a, -um sim, etc.
-----------------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------------	-------------------------------

Pluperfect Subjunctive

hortātus, -a, -um essem, etc.	veritus, -a, -um essem, etc.	secūtus, -a, -um essem, etc.	potitus, -a, -um essem, etc.
-------------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------

Imperative

<i>Pres.</i>	hortāre	verēre	sequere	potire
<i>Fut.</i>	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potitor

Infinitives

<i>Pres.</i>	hortārī	verērī	sequī	potirī
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus, -a, -um esse	veritus, -a, -um esse	secūtus, -a, -um esse	potitus, -a, -um esse

<i>Fut.</i>	¹ hortātūrus,	¹ veritūrus,	¹ secūtūrus,	¹ potītūrus,
	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um
	esse	esse	esse	esse

Participles

<i>Pres.</i>	¹ hortāns,	¹ verēns,	¹ sequēns,	¹ potiēns,
	-antis	-entis	-entis	-entis
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus, -a,	veritus, -a,	secūtus, -a,	potītus, -a,
	-um	-um	-um	-um
<i>Fut.</i>	¹ hortātūrus,	¹ veritūrus,	¹ secūtūrus,	¹ potītūrus,
	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um
<i>F. Pass.</i>	hortandus,	verendus,	sequendus,	potiendus,
or <i>Ger.</i>	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um

Gerund

hortandī, etc. ¹ verendī, etc. ¹ sequendī, etc. ¹ potiendī, etc.

Supine

<i>Acc.</i>	¹ hortātum	¹ veritum	¹ secūtum	¹ potitum
<i>Abl.</i>	¹ hortātū	¹ veritū	¹ secūtū	¹ potitū

¹ Active forms.

RULES OF SYNTAX

AGREEMENT

1. Adjectives and participles agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns to which they belong.
2. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.
3. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains.
4. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb.
5. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

CASES

NOMINATIVE

1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.
2. A predicate noun used after an intransitive verb is in the nominative case.

GENITIVE

1. The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the genitive.
2. The genitive denotes the whole of which a part is taken and is called the *genitive of the whole* or *partitive genitive*.
3. The genitive, modified by an adjective, may be used to describe a person or thing.
4. Definite measurement is expressed by the genitive.

DATIVE

1. The indirect object is expressed by the dative.
2. The dative is used with the adjectives **idōneus**, **amicus**, **inimicus**, **grātus**, **cārus**, **fidus**, to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed.
3. The dative is used to complete the meaning of adjectives meaning *like*, *unlike*, *equal*, *unequal*, and *near*.
4. The dative of indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs **crēdō**, **faveō**, **noceō**, **pāreō**, **persuādeō**, **resistō**, **studeō**, and others of like meaning.
5. The dative is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **dē**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, **super**, and sometimes **circum**. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative.
6. The purpose or end which something serves or is intended to serve is often expressed by the dative.
7. The dative is used with **sum** to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.
8. With the passive periphrastic the dative is used to denote the person by whom the act must be done or ought to be done.

ACCUSATIVE

1. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.
2. Place *to which* is expressed in Latin by the preposition **ad** with the accusative; place *into which* by the preposition **in** with the accusative. With names of towns and small islands, also with **domus** and **rūs**, the accusative without a preposition is used to name the place *to which* or *into which* motion is directed.

3. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

4. The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative.

ABLATIVE

1. Place *in* or *on which* is expressed by the ablative with *in*; place *from which* is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*, *dē*, *ē*, or *ex*. With the names of towns and small islands, also *domus* and *rūs*, the preposition is omitted.

2. The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*.

3. Accompaniment is denoted by the ablative with *cum*.

4. Means or instrument is denoted by the ablative without a preposition.

5. Cause is denoted by the ablative without a preposition.

6. Time *at which* or *within which* an act occurs is denoted by the ablative without a preposition.

7. Manner is expressed by the ablative with a limiting adjective or *cum* or both.

8. The ablative is used to denote *in what respect* something is true. This is called the *ablative of specification*.

9. Separation is expressed by the ablative either with or without a preposition.

10. Degree of difference is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

11. The comparative is followed by the ablative when *quam* (*than*) is omitted.

12. The ablative, modified by an adjective, may be used to describe a person or thing.

13. A noun or pronoun in the ablative, together with an adjective, a participle, or another noun in agreement, may be used to indicate some circumstance (time, cause, condition, or concession) loosely connected with the rest of the sentence. This is called the *ablative absolute*.

15. The deponents **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, and **vēscor** take their objects in the ablative.

VOCATIVE

The vocative is used to denote the person addressed.

LOCATIVE

With the names of towns and small islands, also **domus** and **rūs**, the place where some act occurs or something exists is denoted by the locative, which is like the genitive in the singular of the first and second declension, otherwise like the ablative.

MOODS

1. The indicative is used in statements of fact and in questions which imply that the answer expected is a statement of fact.

2. The imperative is used in commands.

3. The subjunctive, with or without **utinam**, is used to express a wish. The negative is **nē**.

4. The subjunctive is used to express exhortation, command, entreaty. The negative is **nē**.

5. The subjunctive is sometimes used in questions implying doubt.

6. A subordinate clause expressing the purpose of the principal clause has its verb in the subjunctive. Pur-

pose clauses are introduced by **ut** or **nē**, or a relative pronoun.

7. A substantive clause depending on a verb which expresses or implies desire has its verb in the subjunctive.

8. Verbs of fearing may take a dependent clause with the subjunctive introduced by **nē**, *that*, or **ut**, *that not*.

9. The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.

10. Result is often expressed by **ut** with the subjunctive. In negative clauses **ut nōn** is used.

11. A substantive clause depending on a verb which expresses the bringing about of an act has its verb in the subjunctive.

12. A clause introduced by **cum** meaning *when*, if used to describe the situation in which the act of the principal clause took place, has its verb in the subjunctive, commonly the imperfect or pluperfect tense.

13. A clause introduced by **cum** meaning *since* has its verb in the subjunctive.

14. A clause introduced by **cum** meaning *although* has its verb in the subjunctive.

15. A conditional sentence of fact has its verbs in the indicative in both the condition and the conclusion.

16. A conditional sentence of doubt has its verbs in the present subjunctive in both the condition and the conclusion.

17. When a conditional sentence expresses something contrary to fact, the imperfect subjunctive is used in both the condition and the conclusion to refer to present time; the pluperfect subjunctive is used in both condition and conclusion to refer to past time.

THE INFINITIVE

1. **Possum** and a few other verbs require a complementary infinitive to complete their meaning.

2. An infinitive with subject accusative is used with verbs meaning *say, think, know*, etc.

3. An infinitive or clause used substantively is neuter singular.

TENSES

1. Primary or principal tenses in principal clauses are followed by primary or principal tenses in the dependent clauses, secondary or historical tenses in principal clauses by secondary or historical tenses in dependent clauses.

2. The time expressed by the infinitive is relative to that of the principal verb on which it depends. The future infinitive expresses time after, the perfect time before, and the present the same time as the principal verb.

3. The time expressed by the participle is relative to that of the principal verb on which it depends. The future participle expresses time after, the perfect time before, and the present the same time as the principal verb.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

1. Questions may be introduced by interrogative pronouns, interrogative adjectives, interrogative adverbs, or **ne, nōne, num.**

2. The answer *yes* is usually expressed by repeating the verb of the question; the answer *no* by repeating the verb with the negative, **nōn**. Questions are sometimes answered by the use of such words as **certē, certainly, minimē, by no means**, etc.

ORDER OF WORDS

1. The normal order of words in a Latin sentence is the subject, the modifiers of the subject, the modifiers of the verb, the verb.

2. A genitive regularly follows the noun that it limits.

3. An indirect object usually stands before the direct object.

4. An ablative normally precedes the object and other modifiers of the verb.

5. An adjective normally follows its noun. Adjectives of quantity and demonstrative adjectives precede their nouns. The adjective **Rōmānus**, **-a**, **-um** follows its noun.

6. An adverb regularly stands just before the word it modifies.

7. The preposition **cum**, when used with a personal, reflexive, interrogative, or relative pronoun, is joined to the pronoun as an enclitic.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- ā** or **ab**, prep. with abl., *from, by, off*. Translated on in **ā dextrō cornū**, *on the right wing*; **ā dextrā**, *on the right*, etc.
- ab-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *hide, conceal*.
- ac-cipio**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *receive, accept*.
- ācer**, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp; keen, active, eager*.
- aciēs**, -ēi, f., *line of battle*.
- ācritēr**, adv., *sharply, keenly, eagerly*.
- ad**, prep. with acc., *to, towards, near, at, for*.
- ad-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead to, move, induce, influence*.
- ad-eō**, -īre, -iī or -ivī, -itus, *go to, approach, draw near, visit, with acc.*
- ad-ferō**, ad-ferre, at-tulī, ad-lātus, *bring to, convey; report, announce*.
- ad-propinquō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *come near, approach, with dat.*
- ad-sum**, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *be present, assist, with dat.*
- adventus**, -ūs, m., *approach, arrival*.
- aedificium**, aedifici, n., *building, edifice*.
- aedificō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *build*.
- aestās**, -ātis, f., *summer*.
- aetās**, -ātis, f., *age*.
- Āfrica**, -ae, f., *Africa*.
- ager**, agrī, m., *field, farm*.
- agger**, -eris, n., *mound, rampart*.
- agmen**, -inis, n., *an army (on the march); novissimum agmen, rear; primum agmen, van*.
- agō**, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, do, act*.
- agricola**, -ae, m., *farmer*.
- agri-cultūra**, -ae, f., *agriculture*.
- āla**, -ae, f., *wing*.
- albus**, -a, -um, *white*.
- aliquis** (quī), -qua, -quid (quod), *some one, something, some*.
- alius**, -a, -ud, adj., *another, other. alius . . . alius, one*

- ... *another*. **alii** . . . **alii**,
some . . . *others*.
- alter**, -era, -erum, adj., *the one*,
the other (of two). **alter** . . .
alter, *the one* . . . *the other*.
- altitūdō**, -inis, f., *height, depth*.
- altus**, -a, -um, *high, tall, deep*.
- amicē**, adv., *in a friendly man-*
ner.
- amīcitia**, -ae, f., *friendship*.
- amīcus**, -a, -um, adj., *friendly*.
 As a noun, **amīcus**, -ī, m.,
friend.
- ā-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus,
send away; lose.
- amō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *love, like*,
be fond of.
- amplus**, -a, -um, adj., *large*,
ample.
- an**, conj., *or*, introducing the sec-
 ond part of a double question.
- animal**, -ālis, n., *animal*.
- animus**, -ī, m., *mind, heart*,
spirit, feeling.
- annus**, -ī, m., *year*.
- ante**, prep. with acc., *before*.
- anteā**, adv., *before, formerly*.
- antiquus**, -a, -um, adj., *former*,
ancient, old.
- ap-pellō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *ad-*
dress, call, name.
- apud**, prep. with acc., *among;*
at, at the house of.
- aqua**, -ae, f., *water*.
- aquila**, -ae, f., *eagle*.
- arbitror**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *think*,
suppose.
- arbor**, -oris, f., *tree*.
- arma**, -ōrum, n. plur., *arms*,
weapons.
- arō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *plow, till*.
- arx**, arcis, f., *citadel*.
- asper**, -era, -erum, adj., *rough*,
harsh.
- at**, conj., *but*.
- Athēnae**, -ārum, f. plur.,
Athens.
- atque**, ac, conj., *and also, and*.
Atque may be used before
 either vowels or consonants,
 ac before consonants only.
- audācia**, -ae, f., *boldness*.
- audācter**, adv., *boldly*.
- audax**, -acis, adj., *bold, daring*.
- audiō**, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, *hear, hear*
of, listen to.
- aurum**, -ī, n., *gold*.
- aut**, conj., *or*. **aut** . . . **aut**,
either . . . *or*.
- autem**, conj., usually second,
 never first, in the clause, *but*,
moreover, however.
- auxilium**, **auxili**, n., *aid, help;*
 plur., *auxiliary forces*.
- avis**, -is, f., *bird*.
- barbarus**, -a, -um, adj., *rude*,
barbarous. As a noun, **bar-**
barus, -ī, m., *barbarian*,
savage.

bellum, -i, n., *war*.

bene, adv., *well*.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., *good*.

brevis, -e, adj., *short, brief*.

brevitās, -ātis, f., *shortness, brevity*.

C., abbreviation for **Gāius**, English **Caius**.

cadō, -ere, **ce'cidi**, **cāsūrus**, *fall*.

caedēs, -is, f., *slaughter*.

Caesar, -aris, m., *Caesar*.

calamitās, -ātis, f., *loss, disaster, calamity*.

calathus, -i, m., *basket*.

calcar, -āris, n., *spur*.

capiō, -ere, **cēpī**, **captus**, *take, seize, capture*.

captīvus, -i, m., *captive*.

caput, -itis, n., *head*.

Carolus, -i, m., *Charles*.

carrus, -i, m., *cart, wagon*.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear*.

casa, -ae, f., *cottage, hut*.

castra, -ōrum, n. plur., *camp*.
castra pōnere, *to pitch camp*.

causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason*.

celer, -eris, -ere, adj., *swift, quick*.

celeritās, -ātis, f., *swiftness, speed*.

celeriter, adv., *swiftly*.

cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *conceal, hide*.

cēna, -ae, f., *dinner*.

centum, indecl. numeral adj., *one hundred*.

certē, adv., *surely, certainly*.

certus, -a, -um, adj., *certain, sure, fixed*. **certiōrem facere**, *inform*.

cessō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *cease*.

cibus, -i, m., *food*.

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero*.

Cimbri, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Cimbri*.

circiter, adv., *about*.

circum, prep. with acc., *around*.

circum-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come around, surround*.

citō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *rouse, stir up, excite*.

civis, -is, m. and f., *citizen*.

civitās, -ātis, f., *state*.

clāmor, -ōris, *shout, cry, noise*.

clārus, -a, -um, adj., *clear; famous*.

classis, -is, f., *fleet*.

cliēns, -entis, m., *dependent, follower, client*.

co-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus, *learn, know, become acquainted with*.

cōgō, -ere, **coēgī**, **coāctus**, *collect, compel*.

cohors, **cohortis**, f., *cohort* (the tenth part of a legion).

collis, -is, m., *hill*.

columba, -ae, f., *dove*.

com (col-, con-, cor-, co-), a prefix, *together, with*.

comes, -itis, m. and f., *companion, comrade*.

com-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, *join, intrust, commit*. **proelium** *committere*, *join battle*.

com-mōtus, -a, -um, adj., *aroused, moved*.

com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, *disturb, alarm*.

com-pleō, -ēre, -plēvi, -plētus, *fill up*.

condiciō, -ōnis, f., *condition, terms*.

cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bring together, collect*. **sē cōn-ferre**, *betake one's self*.

cōn-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *make, complete, finish, accomplish*.

cōn-firmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *make firm, strengthen, establish, affirm, assert*.

con-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *hurl together, hurl*.

con-iūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *unite by oath, conspire*.

con-locō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *arrange, place, station*.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *try, attempt*.

cōn-scribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus, *enroll, enlist, levy*.

cōn-sequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, *pursue, overtake*.

cōnsilium, **consili**, n., *plan, design; wisdom*.

cōnstantia, -ae, f., *firmness, steadiness*.

cōn-stituō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, *establish, station, found; determine, resolve*.

cōnsul, -ulis, m., *consul*.

con-tendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentus, *hasten; fight, contend*.

con-tineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentus, *hold together; hem in, contain, restrain*.

contrā, prep. with acc., *against, contrary to, opposite*.

con-veniō, -īre, -vēni, -ventus, *come together, assemble*.

con-vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *call together*.

cōpia, -ae, f., *abundance, plenty, wealth*. Plur., **cōpiae**, -ārum, *forces, troops*.

Corinthus, -i, f., *Corinth*.

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn; wing (of an army)*.

corōna, -ae, f., *crown; wreath*.

corpus, -oris, n., *body*.

cotīdiē, adv., *daily*.

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *frequent, numerous*.

crēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, *trust, believe*.

cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *burn*.

- creō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *make ; elect, appoint, create.*
culpa, -ae, f., *fault, blame.*
culpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *blame, censure.*
cum, prep. with abl., *with.*
cum, conj. with the indic. or subjv., *when ; since ; although.*
cūnctus, -a, -um, adj., *all, entire.*
cupiō, -ere, -īvi or -ii, cupītus, *wish, desire.*
cūr, adv., *why, wherefore.*
cūra, -ae, f., *care, pains ; anxiety.*
cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *care for, look after, attend to.*
currō, -ere, cucurri, cursus, *run.*
custōdiō, -ire, -īvi, -ītus, *guard, watch.*
custos, -ōdis, m., *guard, watch ; keeper.*

dē, prep. with abl., *down from, from ; concerning, about, for.*
dea, -ae, f., *goddess.*
dēbeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, *owe, ought, must.*
decem, indecl. numeral adj., *ten.*
decimus, -a, -um, numeral adj., *tenth.*
dēditō, -ōnis, f., *surrender.*
dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, *lead down, escort.*

dē-fendō, -ere, -fendi, -fēnsus, *ward off, repel, defend.*
dē-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, *bring down ; report.*
dē-fessus, -a, -um, adj., *tired out, weary.*
de-inde, adv., *then, in the next place.*
dēleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, *destroy, blot out.*
dē-ligō, -ere, -lēgi, -lēctus, *choose, select.*
dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *point out, show.*
dēnique, adv., *at last, finally.*
dēns, dentis, m., *tooth.*
dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *dense, thick.*
dēsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *long for.*
dē-siliō, -ire, -ui, -sultus, *leap down.*
dē-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *be wanting, lack, with dat.*
deus, -i, m., *god.*
dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *right, right hand.*
dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus, *say, speak.*
diēs, -ēi, m., sometimes f. in the singular, *day.*
dif-ficilis, -e, adj., *hard, difficult.*
dif-ficultās, -ātis, f., *difficulty.*
dignus, -a, -um, adj., *worthy.*

diligenter , adv., <i>carefully, diligently.</i>	du-centi , -ae, -a, numeral adj., <i>two hundred.</i>
diligentia , -ae, f., <i>diligence, care, industry.</i>	dūcō , -ere, dūxī , ductus, <i>lead, consider.</i>
dī-mittō , -ere, -mīsī, -missus, <i>send in different directions, dismiss.</i>	duo , duae, duo, numeral adj., <i>two.</i>
dis-cēdō , -ere, -cessī, -cessurus, <i>depart from, leave, go away, scatter.</i>	duo-decim , indecl. numeral adj., <i>twelve.</i>
dis-cernō , -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, <i>separate ; distinguish.</i>	duo-dēvigintī , indecl. numeral adj., <i>eighteen.</i>
disciplīna , -ae, f., <i>instruction, training, discipline.</i>	dūrus , -a, -um, adj., <i>hard, tough ; harsh, bitter.</i>
dis-similis , -e, adj., <i>unlike, dissimilar.</i>	dux , ducis, m., <i>leader, guide.</i>
diū , adv., <i>for a long time, long.</i>	ē or ex , prep. with abl., <i>out of, from, off, of.</i>
dō , dare, dedī, datus, <i>give.</i>	ē-dūcō , -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, <i>lead out.</i>
doceō , -ēre, -uī, -tus, <i>teach, show.</i>	ef-ferō , -ferre, extulī, ēlātus, <i>bring out, carry away.</i>
dolor , -ōris, m., <i>pain, sorrow.</i>	ef-ficiō , -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, <i>work out ; accomplish ; bring about, cause.</i>
domicilium , domicilī, n., <i>dwelling, abode.</i>	egeō , -ēre, -uī, —, <i>be in need of, lack, with abl.</i>
domina , -ae, f., <i>mistress, lady.</i>	ego , meī, pers. pron., <i>I.</i>
dominus , -ī, m., <i>master, lord, ruler.</i>	eō , ire, iī (ivī), itūrus, <i>go.</i>
domus , -ūs, f., <i>house, home.</i>	epistula , -ae, f., <i>a letter, an epistle.</i>
domī , locative, <i>at home.</i>	eques , equitis, m., <i>horseman, cavalryman.</i>
dōnō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>give, present.</i>	equitātus , -ūs, m., <i>cavalry.</i>
dōnum , -ī, n., <i>gift, present.</i>	equus , -ī, m., <i>horse.</i>
dubitō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>hesitate ; doubt.</i>	ē-ripiō , -ere, -uī, -reptus, <i>seize, snatch ; rescue.</i>
dubius , -a, -um, adj., <i>doubtful, dubious.</i>	

- errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *wander, go away ; err.*
- et, conj.**, *and, also. et . . . et, both . . . and.*
- etiam**, *adv., yet, still ; also, even. nōn solum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.*
- Etrūscī, -ōrum, m.**, *the Etruscans, the people of Etruria.*
- ex**, see **ē**.
- ex-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *cry out, shout ; exclaim.*
- ex-eō, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itūrus**, *go out, go forth.*
- ex-erceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**, *train, exercise ; use, employ.*
- exercitus, -ūs, m.**, *army.*
- ex-istimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *think, reckon, judge.*
- explōrātor, -ōris, m.**, *spy, scout.*
- ex-pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *take by storm, attack.*
- ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *expect, wait.*
- exterior, -ius, adj., comp.** of **exterus**, *outer.*
- exterus, -a, -um, adj.**, *outside, outward.*
- extrēmus, -a, -um, adj.**, *superl. of exterus, utmost, farthest.*
- fābula, -ae, f.**, *story, tale, fable.*
- facile, adv.**, *easily.*
- facilis, -e, adj.**, *easy.*
- faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus**, *make, do ; cause, accomplish. iter facere, march.*
- facultās, -ātis, f.**, *opportunity, ability.*
- fāma, -ae, f.**, *report, rumor ; reputation, fame.*
- faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus**, *be favorable to, favor, with dat.*
- fēlix, -icis, adj.**, *happy, lucky.*
- fēmina, -ae, f.**, *woman.*
- fera, -ae, f.**, *wild beast.*
- ferē, adv.**, *almost, nearly.*
- ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**, *bear, carry ; report.*
- fidēs, -eī, f.**, *faith, trust ; pledge ; protection.*
- fidus, -a, -um, adj.**, *faithful, reliable.*
- filia, -ae, f.**, *daughter.*
- filius, fili, m.**, *son.*
- finis, -is, m.**, *boundary, limit, end ; in plur., territory, country.*
- finitimus, -a, -um, adj.**, *neighboring. As a noun, finitimī, -ōrum, m., neighbors.*
- fiō, fieri, factus sum**, *used as passive of faciō, become, be made, happen.*
- firmus, -a, -um, adj.**, *strong, stable, firm.*
- fluctus, -ūs, m.**, *wave, billow.*
- flūmen, -inis, n.**, *river.*
- fōns, fontis, m.**, *fountain.*

forma, -ae, f., *form, shape ; beauty.*

fortis, -e, adj., *brave, fearless.*

fortiter, adv., *bravely.*

fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune, fate.*

fossa, -ae, f., *ditch.*

frāter, -tris, m., *brother.*

frūmentum, -i, n., *grain.*

fruor, **frui**, **fructus sum**, *enjoy.*

frustrā, adv., *in vain.*

fuga, -ae, f., *flight.*

fugiō, -ere, **fūgi**, **fugitūrus**, *flee, run.*

fugō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *drive away, put to flight.*

fungor, **fungi**, **fūctus sum**, *perform.*

Gāius, **Gāi**, m., *Gaius, English form, Caius.*

Galba, -ae, m., *Galba, a Roman name.*

galea, -ae, f., *helmet.*

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul.*

Gallus, -i, m., *a Gaul.*

Genāva, -ae, f., *Geneva.*

Germānia, -ae, f., *Germany.*

Germānus, -i, m., *a German.*

gerō, -ere, **gessi**, **gestus**, *carry, wear ; wage. bellum gerere, wage war.*

gladius, **gladi**, m., *sword.*

glōria, -ae, f., *glory, fame.*

Gracchus, -i, m., *Gracchus.*

gracilis, -e, adj., *slender.*

grātia, -ae, f., *thanks, gratitude ; influence.*

grātus, -a, -um, adj., *pleasing, acceptable.*

gravis, -e, adj., *heavy ; severe ; weighty.*

graviter, adv., *heavily, seriously, severely.*

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *have, hold ; consider.*

habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *dwelt, live ; inhabit.*

Helvetiī, -ōrum, m., *Helvetians.*

hic, **haec**, **hoc**, *demonstrative adj. and pron., this (of mine).*

hiems, -emis, f., *winter.*

hinc, adv., *from here, hence.*

Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain.*

Hispāniēnsis, -e, adj., *Spanish.*

As a noun, **Hispāniēnsis**, -is, m., *a Spaniard.*

hō-diē, adv., *to-day.*

homō, -inis, m. and f., *human being, man.*

honor, -ōris, m., *honor, esteem, glory.*

hōra, -ae, f., *hour.*

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *urge, exhort ; encourage.*

hostis, -is, m. and f., *enemy. In plur., the enemy.*

humilis, -e, adj., *low, humble.*

iaciō, -ere, **iēcī**, **iactus**, *throw, hurl.*

- iam**, adv., *now, already.*
ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*
Idem, eadem, idem, demonstrative pron., *same.*
idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *suitable, fit.*
igitur, conj., *therefore.*
ignis, -is, m., *fire.*
ille, illa, illud, demonstrative adj. and pron., *that (yonder).*
impedimentum, -i, n., *hindrance; in plur., baggage.*
impediō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, *hinder, obstruct, impede.*
imperātor, -ōris, m., *general, commander in chief.*
imperium, imperi, n., *command; power; empire.*
imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *command, order.* Usually governs dat., followed by *ut* with the subjunctive.
impetus, -ūs, m., *attack. impetum facere in, make an attack upon.*
in, prep. with acc., *into, to, against; upon, at; with abl., in, on, upon, over.*
in-cendō, -ere, -cendi, -cēnsus, *set fire to, burn.*
in-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *begin.*
in-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *urge on, rouse.*
incola, -ae, m. and f., *inhabitant.*
- incolō, -ere, -uī, —** (intrans.), *live, dwell; (trans.), inhabit, dwell in.*
incolumis, -e, adj., *sound, safe, unharmed.*
induō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *put on.*
indūtus, -a, -um, adj., *clothed.*
in-eō, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itus, *go into; begin, enter upon.*
in-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, *bring in, upon, or against.*
bellum inferre, *make war upon.*
inferus, -a, -um, adj., *low, below.*
in-firmus, -a, -um, adj., *weak, infirm.*
in-gredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *advance, enter.*
inimicus, -a, -um, adj., *unfriendly, hostile.* As a noun, **inimicus, -i**, m., *a personal enemy.*
iniūria, -ae, f., *injury, wrong.*
inopia, -ae, f., *want, need, lack.*
inquit, *said he, said she.*
in-sequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *follow on, pursue.*
insigne, -is, n., *badge, mark, decoration.*
in-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *draw up, arrange.*
insula, -ae, f., *island.*
intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *understand.*

inter , prep. with acc., <i>between, among</i> .	Iūlia , -ae, f., <i>Julia</i> .
interfectus , -a, -um, adj., <i>slain, dead</i> .	iuvō , -āre, iūvī, iūtus, <i>help, aid ; please</i> .
inter-ficiō , -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, <i>kill</i> .	L. , abbreviation for <i>Lucius</i> .
interior , -ius, adj., <i>inner, interior</i> .	labor , -ōris, m., <i>labor, toil</i> .
inter-sum , -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, <i>be present, take part in, with dat.</i>	labōrō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>work, labor</i> .
intrā , adv. and prep. with acc., <i>within, in</i> .	lacus , -ūs, m., <i>lake</i> .
inūtilis , -e, adj., <i>useless</i> .	lapis , -idis, m., <i>stone</i> .
ipse , -a, -um, intensive pron., <i>self, himself, herself, itself ; that very, this very</i> .	lātē , adv., <i>widely</i> .
is, ea, id , demonstrative adj. and pron., <i>this, that ; he, she, it</i> .	Latinus , -a, -um, adj., <i>Latin</i> .
iste , -a, -ud, demonstrative adj. and pron., <i>that (of yours)</i> .	lātitudō , -inis, f., <i>width</i> .
ita , adv., <i>so, thus (manner)</i> .	lātus , -a, -um, adj., <i>wide, broad</i> .
Italia , -ae, f., <i>Italy</i> .	latus , -eris, n., <i>side, flank</i> .
ita-que , conj., <i>and so, therefore</i> .	laudō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>praise</i> .
item , adv., <i>so, in like manner</i> .	laus, laudis , f., <i>praise</i> .
iter , itineris, n., <i>journey, march, route ; passage</i> .	lēgātus , -ī, m., <i>ambassador ; lieutenant</i> .
iubeō , -ēre, iussī, iussus, <i>order, command</i> . Usually with the infin. and subject acc.	legiō , -ōnis, f., <i>legion</i> .
iūdex , iūdicis, m., <i>judge</i> .	legō , -ere, lēgī, lēctus, <i>read</i> .
iūdicīō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>judge, decide</i> .	levis , -e, adj., <i>light</i> .
iugum , -ī, n., <i>yoke ; ridge (of mountains)</i> .	lēx , lēgis, f., <i>law</i> .
	libenter , adv., <i>willingly, gladly</i> .
	liber , libri, m., <i>book</i> .
	liber , -era, -erum, adj., <i>free</i> .
	liberī , -ōrum, m., <i>children</i> .
	liberō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>set free, liberate</i> .
	libertās , -ātis, f., <i>freedom, liberty</i> .
	lingua , -ae, f., <i>tongue, language</i> .
	locus , -ī, m., in plur., <i>loca</i> , n., <i>place, location</i> .

longē, adv., *far, a long way off.*

quam longē, *how far.*

longitūdō, -inis, f., *length.*

longus, -a, -um, adj., *long.*

lūdus, -ī, m., *play; school.*

lūna, -ae, f., *moon.*

lūx, lūcis, f., *light.* **prima lūx**, *daybreak.*

maculō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *spot, spoil.*

magis, adv., *more; rather.*

magister, -tri, m., *teacher; master.*

māgnitūdō, -inis, f., *greatness, size.*

māgnopere, adv., *greatly, exceedingly.*

māgnus, -a, -um, adj., *great, large.*

māior, -ius, adj., *comp. of māgnus, greater, larger.*

māiōrēs, -um, m., plur. of **māior**, *ancestors.*

mālō, mālī, mālui, —, *wish more, prefer.*

malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad, evil.*

mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *command; intrust.*

maneō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsurus, *remain, stay.*

manus, -ūs, f., *hand; force, band.*

Mārcus, -ī, m., *Marcus, Mark.*

mare, -is, n., *sea.*

māter, -tris, f., *mother.*

mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *hasten.*

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., *ripe, mature.*

māximē, adv., *especially, very much.*

māximus, -a, -um, adj., *greatest, largest.*

medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle, middle part.*

melior, -ius, adj., *comp. of bonus, better.*

melius, adv., *comp. of bene, better.*

memoria, -ae, f., *memory.*

mēns, nientis, f., *mind.*

mēnsis, -sis, m., *month.*

mercātor, -ōris, m., *trader, merchant.*

meridiēs, -ēi, m., *midday, noon.*

metus, -ūs, m., *fear, dread.*

meus, -a, -um, *possessive adj. and pron., my, mine.*

mīles, -itis, m., *soldier.*

mīlle, plur. **mīlia**, -ium, *numeral adj. and subst., thousand.*

minimē, adv., *least, very little.*

minus, -a, -um, adj., *least, smallest.*

minor, -us, *smaller, less.*

minus, adv., *less.*

mīrus, -a, -um, adj., *wonderful.*

miser, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched, unhappy, miserable.*

mittō, -ere, misi, missus, *send.*

- moenia, -ium, n. plur., walls, ramparts.**
molestus, -a, -um, adj., troublesome, annoying.
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, advise, warn.
mōns, montis, m., mountain.
mōnstrum, -ī, n., monster.
mora, -ae, f., delay.
moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, delay, linger.
mors, mortis, f., death.
mōs, mōris, m., custom; in plural, character, habits.
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, move.
mox, adv., soon, presently.
multitūdō, -inis, f., great number, multitude.
multum, adv., much.
multus, -a, -um, adj., much; plur., many.
mūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, fortify.
mūnitiō, -ōnis, f., fortification.
mūrus, -ī, m., wall.
mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, change.
nam, conj., for.
nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, tell, relate.
nātiō, -ōnis, f., race.
nātūra, -ae, f., nature.
nauta, -ae, m., sailor.
nāvigium, nāvigī, n., boat.
nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, sail.
- nāvis, -is, f., ship. nāvis longa, man-of-war.**
nē, conj. and adv., in order that not, lest. nē . . . quidem, not even.
-ne, interrog. particle (enclitic).
nec or neque, conj., and not, nor. nec . . . nec or neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.
necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, kill.
negōtium, negōtī, n., business, matter.
nēmō, dat. nēminī, m. and f., no one.
neque, see nec.
neuter, -tra, -trum, adj., neither (of two).
niger, -gra, -grum, adj., black.
nihil, also nil, indecl., n., nothing.
nisi, conj., if not, unless, except.
nōbilis, -e, adj., well known, noble.
noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, hurt, injure, with dat.
noctū, abl. used as adv., at night, by night.
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, be unwilling, not to wish.
nōmen, -inis, n., name.
nōn, adv., not.
nōn-dum, adv., not yet.
nōn-ne, interrog. particle, expecting the answer "yes."
nōs, nostrum, pers. pron., we.

noster, -tra, -trum, possessive
adj. and pron., *our, ours.*

Plur., **nostrī**, -ōrum, m., *our men.*

novem, indecl. adj., *nine.*

novus, -a, -um, adj., *new.*

nox, noctis, f., *night.*

nūbēs, -is, f., *cloud.*

nūllus, -a, -um, adj., *not any, none, no.*

num, interrog. particle expecting the answer "no." In indirect question, *whether.*

numerus, -ī, m., *number.*

numquam, adv., *never.*

nunc, adv., *now.*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, announce, report.

nūntius, nūnti, m., *messenger.*

nūper, adv., *recently, lately, just now.*

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of.*

obses, -idis, m. and f., *hostage, pledge.*

obtineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentus, possess, occupy, hold.

occāsus, -ūs, m., *going down, setting.*

occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, seize, take possession of.

oc-currō, -ere, -curri, -cursus, run towards, meet, with dat.

octō, indecl. numeral adj., *eight.*

oculus, -ī, m., *eye.*

ōlim, adv., *formerly, once upon a time.*

omnis, -e, adj., *all, every.*

oppidum, -ī, n., *town.*

oppūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, storm, attack, besiege.

optimē, adv., *very well, best of all.*

optimus, -a, -um, adj., *best, most excellent.*

opus, -eris, n., *work, task.*

ōrāculum, -ī, n., *oracle.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech, oration.*

ōrātor, -ōris, m., *orator.*

ōrdō, -inis, m., *row, order, rank.*

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n., *jewel, ornament.*

ōrnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, adorn.

paene, adv., *nearly, almost.*

palūs, -ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh.*

pār, paris, adj., *equal.*

parcō, -ere, peperci, parsūrus, spare, with dat.

pāreō, -ēre, -ui, —, obey, with dat.

parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, prepare for, prepare.

pars, partis, f., *part, share; side, direction.*

parum, adv., *little, not enough.*

parvus, -a, -um, adj., *small, little.*

passus, -ūs, m., *step, pace.*

mille passuum , <i>thousand paces, mile.</i>	per-veniō , -ire, -vēnī, -ventus, <i>arrive, reach, come to.</i>
pateō , -ēre, -uī, —, <i>lie open ; extend.</i>	pēs , pedis, m., <i>foot.</i>
pater , -tris, m., <i>father.</i>	pessimus , -a, -um, adj., <i>worst.</i>
pator , pati, passus sum, <i>suffer, allow, permit.</i>	petō , -ere, -iī (-ivī), -itus, <i>seek, ask, beg.</i>
patria , -ae, f., <i>native land</i>	pictūra , -ae, f., <i>picture.</i>
pauci , -ae, -a, adj., <i>few.</i>	piger , -gra, -grum, adj., <i>lazy, slow ; dull.</i>
paulō , adv., <i>by a little, little.</i>	pīlum , -ī, n., <i>spear, javelin.</i>
paulum , adv., <i>a little, somewhat.</i>	pīrāta , -ae, m., <i>pirate, sea-robber.</i>
pāx , pācis, f., <i>peace.</i>	placeō , -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, <i>please, be pleasing, with dat.</i>
pecūnia , -ae, f., <i>money.</i>	plēnus , -a, -um, adj., <i>full.</i>
pedes , -itis, m., <i>foot-soldier.</i>	plūrimum , adv., <i>very much.</i>
peior , peius, adj., <i>worse.</i>	plurimus , -a, -um, adj., <i>most, very many.</i>
per , prep. with acc., <i>through, by, on account of.</i>	plūs , plūris, adj., <i>more ; plur., more, several.</i>
per-dūcō , -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, <i>lead through. fossam per-dūcere, to construct a ditch.</i>	poena , -ae, f., <i>punishment, penalty.</i>
per-ferō , -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, <i>endure ; report.</i>	poēta , -ae, m., <i>poet.</i>
perfidus , -a, -um, adj., <i>treacherous, faithless.</i>	polliceor , -ēri, -itus sum, <i>promise.</i>
periculum , -ī, n., <i>danger, peril.</i>	Pompēiī , -ōrum, m., <i>Pompeii.</i>
per-moveō , -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, <i>alarm, influence.</i>	pōmum , -ī, n., <i>apple, fruit.</i>
persevērantia , -ae, f., <i>perseverance.</i>	pōnō , -ere, posuī, positus, <i>put, place. castra pōnere, pitch camp.</i>
per-suādeō , -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus, <i>persuade, advise, governs the dat. followed by ut with the subjunctive.</i>	pōns , pontis, m., <i>bridge.</i>
per-tineō , -ēre, -uī, —, <i>extend, reach ; pertain.</i>	populus , -ī, m., <i>people.</i>
	Porsena , -ae, m., <i>Porsena.</i>
	porta , -ae, f., <i>gate, door.</i>

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, carry, bear.

portus, -ūs, m., harbor, port.

possum, posse, potuī, —, be able, can.

post, prep. with acc., after, behind.

postea, adv., afterwards.

posterus, -a, -um, adj., following, next.

postrēmō, adv., at last, finally.

postridiē, adv., on the next day.

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, demand, require.

potēns, potentis, adj., powerful.

potentia, -ae, f., might, power.

potestās, -ātis, f., power, opportunity.

potior, -iri, -itus sum, get possession of.

prae-beō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, offer, furnish, supply.

praeda, -ae, f., booty, spoil, plunder.

prae-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, place in command of.

prae-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, send ahead.

praemium, praemī, n., reward, prize.

praesidium, praesidī, n., guard, garrison.

prae-stō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus, excel, surpass.

prae-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be over, be in command of, with dat.

praeter, prep. with acc., beyond, except.

premō, -ere, pressi, pressus, press, press hard.

primō, adv., at first, in the beginning.

primum, adv., first. **quam primum**, as soon as possible.

primus, -a, -um, adj., first.

princeps, -cipis, m., chief, leader.

prior, -ius, adj., former.

pro, prep. with abl., before; for, for the sake of, in behalf of; instead of, as; in proportion to.

proelium, proeli, n., battle.

proficiscor, -i, -fectus sum, set out.

prō-gredior, -i, -gressus sum, proceed, advance.

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, keep away from, hinder, prevent, prohibit.

prō-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, move forward, advance.

prope, adv., nearly, near, almost.

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hurry, hasten.

propter, prep. with acc., on account of, because of.

prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, prō-

- futūrus**, *be useful, benefit*,
with dat.
- prōvincia**, -ae, f., *province*.
- proximē**, adv., *nearest, next ;
most recently*.
- proximus**, -a, -um, adj., *nearest,
next*.
- pūblicus**, -a, -um, adj., *public*.
- puella**, -ae, f., *girl*.
- puer**, -erī, m., *boy*.
- pūgna**, -ae, f., *fight, battle*.
- pūgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight*.
- pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, adj.,
beautiful, pretty.
- pūrē**, adv., *purely*.
- pūrus**, -a, -um, adj., *pure*.
- putō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think,
reckon*.
- quā dē causā**, *for this reason,
wherefore*.
- quā rē**, *therefore, for this rea-
son*.
- quaerō**, -ere, -sivī, -situs, *ask,
seek, inquire*.
- quam**, adv., *how ; after a com-
parative, than ; with a su-
perlative, translated as . . .
as possible*.
- quantus**, -a, -um, adj., *how
great, how much*.
- quārtus**, -a, -um, numeral adj.,
fourth.
- quattuor**, indecl. numeral adj.,
four.
- quattuor-decim**, indecl. numeral
adj., *fourteen*.
- que**, enclitic, *and*.
- quī, quae, quod**, rel. pron. and
adj., *who, which, what, that*.
- quia**, conj., *because*.
- quīdam, quaedam, quiddam**
(quoddam), indef. pron. and
adj., *a certain one, a certain*.
- quidem**, adv., *certainly, indeed*.
- quīndecim**, indecl. numeral adj.,
fifteen.
- quīngentī**, -ae, -a, numeral adj.,
five hundred.
- quīnque**, indecl. numeral adj.,
five.
- quīntus**, -a, -um, numeral adj.,
fifth.
- quis (quī), quae, quid (quod)**,
interrog. pron. and adj., *who?
what? which?*
- quis (quī), qua (quae), quid**
(quod), indef. pron. and adj.,
used after **sī, nisi, nē, num**,
*any one, anything, some one,
something, any, some*.
- quisque, quaeque, quidque**
(quodque), indef. pron. and
adj., *each one, every one, each,
every*.
- quō**, interrog. and rel. adv.,
whither, where.
- quō**, conj., *in order to, that, with
comp. degree*.
- quod**, conj., *because ; in that*.

quōmodō, interrog. adv., *how?*
quoque, conj., *also*.

quot, indecl. adj., *how many?*
quotiens, interrog. and rel.
 adv., *how often? as often as*.

rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *seize, snatch*.

re- or **red-**, an inseparable prefix, *again, back, anew, in return*.

re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *take back; receive*. **sē recipere**, *withdraw, retreat*.

re-cūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *refuse*.

red-eō, -ire, -iī (-īvi), -itus, *go back, return*.

re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead back*.

re-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bring back; report*.

rēgina, -ae, f., *queen*.

regiō, -ōnis, f., *region, district*.

rēgnum, -ī, n., *royal power; kingdom*.

regō, -ere, **rēxi**, **rēctus**, *rule, govern*.

re-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *hurl back, repulse*.

re-linguō, -ere, -liquī, -lictus, *leave, abandon*.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj., *left over, remaining*. As a noun, plur., *the rest*.

re-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send back*.

re-periō, -ire, **repperī**, **repertus**, *find, discover*.

re-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *carry back; win, report*.

rēs, **rei**, f., *thing, affair, business, circumstance*.

re-sistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *oppose, resist, with dat.*

re-spondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus, *answer, reply*.

rēspūblica, **reīpūblicae**, f., *state, republic*.

rēx, **rēgis**, m., *king*.

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *Rhine*.

rīpa, -ae, f., *bank (of a river)*.

rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *ask*.

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., *Roman*.
 As a noun, m. and f., *a Roman*.

rosa, -ae, f., *rose*.

rūmor, -ōris, m., *report, rumor*.

rūpēs, -is, f., *cliff, rock*.

rūs, **rūris**, n. (locative abl. **rūrī**, no gen., dat., or abl. plur.), *the country*.

saepe, adv., *often, frequently*.

sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow*.

salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety*.

sanguis, -inis, m., *blood*.

satis, adv. and indecl. noun, *enough, sufficient*.

saxum, -i, n., *rock*.

scelus, -eris, n., *crime*.

sciō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *know*.

scribō, -ere, **scripsi**, **scriptus**,
write.

scūtum, -i, n., *shield, buckler*.

sē, see **sui**.

secundus, -a, -um, adj., *follow-
ing, second ; favorable*.

sed, conj., *but*.

sēdecim, indecl. numeral adj.,
sixteen.

sedeō, -ēre, **sēdī**, **sessus**, *sit*.

semper, adv., *always, forever*.

sentiō, -īre, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus**, *feel*,
know, perceive.

septem, indecl. numeral adj.,
seven.

septendecim, indecl. numeral
adj., *seventeen*.

septimus, -a, -um, numeral
adj., *seventh*.

sequor, -ī, **secūtus sum**, *follow*.

serviō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *serve*,
with dat.

servitūs, -ūtis, f., *slavery, servi-
tude*.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save*,
keep.

servus, -ī, m., *slave, servant*.

sēsē, emphatic for **sē**.

sex, indecl. numeral adj., *six*.

Sextus, -ī, m., *Sextus*.

sī, conj., *if*.

sic, adv., *thus, in this way*.

Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily*.

signifer, -erī, m., *standard
bearer*.

signum, -ī, n., *ensign, standard ;
signal*.

silva, -ae, f., *forest, wood*.

similis, -e, adj., *like, similar*.

sine, prep. with abl., *without*.

singulī, -ae, -a, distributive
numeral adj., *one at a time*,
single.

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left*.

socius, **soci**, m., *comrade, ally*.

sōl, **sōlis**, m., *sun*. **sōlis oc-
cāsū**, *at sunset*.

soleō, -ēre, **solitus sum**, semi-
dep. verb, *be wont, be accus-
tomed*.

sōlum, adv., *alone, only*. **nōn
sōlum . . . sed etiam**, *not
only . . . but also*.

sōlus, -a, -um, adj., *alone, only*.

soror, -ōris, f., *sister*.

spatium, **spatī**, n., *space, dis-
tance ; time*.

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *look
at, witness*.

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hope*,
expect.

spēs, **speī**, f., *hope*.

statim, adv., *immediately, at
once*.

stō, -āre, **stetī**, **status**, *stand*.

studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *be eager*,
strive for, with dat.

studium, studi, n., *eagerness, desire, zeal.*

sub, prep. with acc. and abl., *under, below, up to ; at or to the foot of.*

subitō, adv., *suddenly.*

sui (gen.), reflexive pron., of *himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be, exist.

summus, -a, -um, adj., *highest, greatest. in summō colle, on the top of the hill.*

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take, assume, put on.*

super, prep. with acc. and abl., *over, above.*

superbia, -ae, f., *pride, arrogance.*

superbus, -a, -um, adj., *proud, haughty.*

superior, -ius, adj., *higher, superior.*

superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, over- *come, conquer ; surpass, excel.*

superus, -a, -um, adj., *above, upper.*

supplicium, supplicī, n., *punishment, torture.*

sus-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *undertake, assume.*

sus-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *hold up, withstand, check, sustain.*

suus, -a, -um, reflexive posses-

sive adj. and pron., his, her, hers, its, their, theirs.

T., abbreviation of **Titus.**

tālis, -e, adj., *such. talis . . . qualis, such . . . as.*

tam, adv., *so, such (degree).*

tamen, adv., *yet, however, nevertheless.*

tandem, adv., *at length, finally.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, such. tantus . . . quantus, as large as.*

tēlum, -ī, n., *weapon.*

tempestās, -ātis, f., *storm, bad weather, tempest.*

templum, -ī, n., *temple, shrine.*

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, try, *test ; attempt.*

tempus, -oris, n., *time.*

teneō, -ēre, -uī, —, hold, *keep.*

terra, -ae, f., *earth, land.*

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, frighten, *alarm, terrify.*

terror, -ōris, m., *alarm, dread, terror.*

tertius, -a, -um, numeral adj., *third.*

Tiberius, Tiberī, m., *Tiberius.*

timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, fear, be *afraid of.*

timidus, -a, -um, adj., *cowardly, timid.*

timor, -ōris, m., *fear, dread.*

tot, indecl. adj., *so many*.
tōtus, -a, -um, adj., *whole, entire*.
trā-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give up, hand over, surrender*.
trā-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead across*.
trāns, prep. with acc., *across, over*.
trāns-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus, *go across, cross*.
tredecim, indecl. numeral adj., *thirteen*.
trēs, **tria**, numeral adj., *three*.
trīgintā, indecl. numeral adj., *thirty*.
tū, **tuī**, pers. pron., *thou, you*.
tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet*.
tum, adv., *then, at that time*.
turris, -is, f., *tower*.
tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *safe*.
tuus, -a, -um, possessive adj. and pron., *your, yours*.
ubi, rel. and interrog. adv., *where, when*.
ūllus, -a, -um, adj., *any*.
ultimus, -a, -um, adj., *farthest*.
umquam, adv., *ever, at any time*.
ūnā, adv., *along with*.
ūndecim, indecl. numeral adj., *eleven*.
ūn-dē-vīgintī, indecl. numeral adj., *nineteen*.

undique, adv., *on all sides, everywhere*.
ūnus, -a, -um, numeral adj., *one; alone*.
urbs, -is, f., *city*.
ut, conj., *that, in order that; as* (when followed by indicative).
uter, -tra, -trum, interrog. pron. and adj., *which* (of two).
ūtilis, -e, adj., *useful*.
utinam, adv., *oh that, would that*.
ūtor, **ūtī**, **ūsus sum**, *use*.
valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *be powerful, be well*.
validus, -a, -um, adj., *strong, able, well*.
vallēs, -is, f., *valley*.
vāllum, -ī, n., *rampart, earth-works*.
vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *lay waste, devastate*.
vēlōx, **vēlōcis**, adj., *swift*.
veniō, -īre, **vēnī**, **ventus**, *come*.
ventus, -ī, m., *wind*.
verbum, -ī, n., *word*.
vereor, -ērī, **veritus sum**, *fear, dread*.
Vergilius, **Vergilī**, m., *Vergil*.
vērō, adv., *in truth, surely; conj., but, however*.
vērū, -a, -um, adj., *true, actual*.

vēscor, vēscī, —, —, def. verb, <i>eat</i> , with abl.	vincō, -ere, vicī, victus, con- <i>quer, defeat.</i>
vester, -tra, -trum, possessive adj. and pron., <i>your, yours.</i>	vir, virī, m., man ; hero.
vestigium, vestigī, n., footstep, <i>track, trace.</i>	virgō, -inis, f., maiden.
vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitus, forbid.	virtūs, -ūtis, f., courage, valor ; <i>manliness ; virtue.</i>
vetus, veteris, adj., old.	vīs, vīs, f., strength, power, <i>force.</i>
vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trouble, <i>annoy.</i>	vīta, -ae, f., life.
via, -ae, f., way, road, street.	vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, shun, <i>avoid.</i>
vicēsīmus, -a, -um, numeral adj., <i>twentieth.</i>	vīvō, -ere, vixī, —, live.
victor, -ōris, m., victor, con- <i>queror.</i>	vīvus, -a, -um, adj., alive, living.
victōria, -ae, f., victory.	vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call, <i>summon, invite.</i>
vīcus, -ī, m., village.	volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, fly.
videō, -ēre, vidī, vīsus, see.	volō, velle, voluī, —, will, be <i>willing, wish.</i>
videor, -ēri, vīsus sum, seem, <i>appear.</i>	vōs, pers. pron., you, ye.
vigilia, -ae, f., watch (part of the <i>night).</i>	vōx, vōcis, f., voice. In plur., <i>words.</i>
vinciō, -īre, vīxī, vīctus, bind, <i>tie, fetter.</i>	vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>wound, hurt.</i>
	vulnus, -eris, n., wound, injury.

VOCABULARY FOR SUPPLEMENTARY MATTER

ab-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus, go <i>away, depart.</i>	asylum, -ī, n., asylum.
ab-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctus, <i>join to, join ; add.</i>	atrōciter, adv., fiercely, cruelly.
ad-loquor, -ī, -locūtus sum, <i>speak to, address.</i>	augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, in- <i>crease.</i>
ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>manage, administer.</i>	aura, -ae, f., breeze, air.
ad-moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, warn, <i>admonish.</i>	Campāna, -ae, f., Campana.
adulātor, -ōris, m., flatterer.	canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus, sing.
aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, value, <i>consider.</i>	cantus, -ūs, m., song.
agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, pursue, <i>chase.</i>	Capitōlium, Capitoli, n., Capi- <i>toline hill.</i>
Albānī, -ōrum, m., Albans.	carcer, -eris, m., prison.
amoenē, adv., pleasantly, de- <i>lightfully.</i>	cāritās, -ātis, f., esteem.
amor, -ōris, m., love.	carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptus, <i>pluck, nibble, enjoy.</i>
ampliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, en- <i>large.</i>	cēnsus, -ūs, m., census, enu- <i>meration.</i>
an-nectō, -ere, -nexuī, -nexus, <i>tie to, fasten to.</i>	cerva, -ae, f., deer, hind.
ap-petō, -ere, -petiī, appetivī, <i>-petitus, seek for.</i>	ceu, adv., as, as it were.
armātus, -a, -um, adj., armed.	Cincinnātus, -ī, m., Cincinnatus.
ascia, -ae, f., axe.	claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, <i>close, inclose, shut.</i>
	cloāca, -ae, f., drain, sewer.
	cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, con- <i>sider, reflect.</i>
	com-plector, -ī, -plexus sum, <i>embrace.</i>

concilium, concili , n., <i>assembly, council.</i>	enim , conj., <i>for.</i>
concordia , -ae, f., <i>harmony, concord.</i>	Ennius, Enni , m., <i>Ennius.</i>
coniux, coniugis , m. and f., <i>spouse, husband, wife.</i>	exsilium, exsili , n., <i>exile.</i>
cōsanguineus , -a, -um, <i>related by blood ; as noun, m., kinsman.</i>	fēlis, fēlis , f., <i>cat.</i>
Cornēlia , -ae, f., <i>Cornelia.</i>	finiō , -ire, -ivī, -itus, <i>end, finish.</i>
cūria , -ae, f., <i>ward ; senate house.</i>	flōreō , -ēre, -uī, —, <i>flourish, prosper.</i>
dē-cidō , -ere, -cidī, —, <i>fall down, fall.</i>	foedus, -eris , n., <i>league, treaty.</i>
dē-lābor , -ī, -lāpsus sum, <i>slip down, fall.</i>	folium, foli , n., <i>leaf.</i>
dē-scribō , -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus, <i>divide, mark off.</i>	foveō , -ēre, fōvī, fōtum, <i>cherish, kiss.</i>
dē-vorō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>eat up, devour.</i>	frangō , -ere, frēgī, fractus, <i>break.</i>
discordia , -ae, f., <i>lack of harmony, discord.</i>	fulmen , -inis, n., <i>thunderbolt, lightning.</i>
dissidium, dissidī , n., <i>dissension.</i>	gaudeō , -ēre, gavisus sum, <i>semi-dep. verb, rejoice.</i>
dis-tribuō , -ere, -uī, -ūtus, <i>divide, distribute.</i>	gaudium, gaudī , n., <i>joy, delight.</i>
dīves, dīvitis , adj., <i>rich.</i>	hīc , adv., <i>here, in this place.</i>
dulcis , -e, adj., <i>sweet, dear.</i>	hinc , adv., <i>from this place, hence.</i>
dum , conj., <i>while, as long as ; until.</i>	Horātius, Horāti , m., <i>Horatius, Horace.</i>
ē-iciō , -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, <i>cast out, expel.</i>	humus , -ī, f., <i>earth, soil ; grave.</i>
ē-lābor , -ī, -lāpsus sum, <i>glide away, escape.</i>	lāniculum , -ī, n., <i>Janiculan hill.</i>
	icō , icere , ici , ictus , <i>strike.</i>
	ignōscō , -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus, <i>pardon, with dat.</i>
	impudēns , -entis, adj., <i>shameless, impudent.</i>

in-choō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, begin.	nitor, -i, nisus sum, strive, endeavor.
in-cidō, -ere, -cidi, —, fall into or upon ; chance to meet with.	nitor, -oris, m., brightness.
incursiō, -ōnis, f., attack, incursion.	ordinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, arrange, order.
inermis, -e, adj., unarmed.	orior, oriri, ortus sum, rise, arise ; begin.
insidiae, -ārum, f. plur., treachery, deceit.	otium, otī, n., rest, quiet, peace.
in-stituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitutus, appoint, instruct.	pāscor, -i, pāstus sum, feed, pasture, graze.
interrēgnum, -i, n., an interregnum.	pate-faciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, make open, open.
iūcundus, -a, -um, adj., pleasant, nice.	patior, -i, passus sum, suffer, allow, permit.
Iuppiter, Iovis, m., Jupiter.	penna, -ae, f., feather.
iūstītia, -ae, f., justice.	per-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, allow, permit.
iuvenis, -e, adj., young ; iuvenis, -is, m., a young man.	Porsena, -ae, m., Porsena.
iuxta, prep. with acc., near to, close to, adjoining.	poscō, -ere, poposci, —, demand.
lacrima, -ae, f., tear.	praecordia, -ōrum, n. plur., diaphragm ; heart ; affections.
laniō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, tear in pieces.	prātum, -i, n., meadow.
lignātor, -ōris, m., woodman.	prex, precis, f., prayer, entreaty.
lūdō, -ere, lūsi, lusus, play.	proavus, -i, m., great-grandfather.
Maecēnās, -ātis, m., Maecenas.	procella, -ae, f., storm, blast ; attack.
molior, -iri, -itus sum, direct, wield.	prō-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, expose to view ; propose.
molliō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, soften, subdue.	prō-tegō, -ere, -tēxi, -tēctus, cover in front, protect.
Nāsica, -ae, m., Nasica.	
nepōs, -ōtis, m., grandson.	

VOCABULARY FOR SUPPLEMENTARY MATTER 337

quadrāgintā, indecl. numeral
adj., *forty*.

quercus, -ūs, f., *an oak*.

rāmulus, -i, m., *small branch*.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *reign*,
rule.

re-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus,
cut away, destroy, break
down.

re-vertor, -vertī, -vertī, -versus,
usually deponent in pres.
system, *turn back, return*.

Rōmulus, -i, m., *Romulus*.

rōstrum, -i, n., *beak*.

sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., *sacred*.

senectūs, -ūtis, f., *old age*.

socer, -erī, m., *father-in-law*.

sonitus, -ūs, m., *sound, noise*.

spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētus,
despise, scorn.

statua, -ae, f., *image, statue*.

stipes, -itis, m., *trunk (of a*
tree).

suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsūrus,
advise, urge.

sub-volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fly*
up, fly away.

suc-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -ces-

sūrus, *come up, follow, suc-*
ceed.

suc-cidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus, *cut*
down, fell.

Tarquinius, **Tarquini**, m., *Tar-*
quin.

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus,
turn, pursue one's way.

tergum, -i, n., *back, rear*.

Tiberius, **Tiberī**, m., *Tiberius*.

torqueō, -ēre, torsi, tortus,
torture; twist.

trānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *swim*
across.

tristis, -e, adj., *sad, sorrowful*.

truncus, -i, m., *trunk (of a tree)*.

tūtor, -ōris, m., *guardian; pro-*
tector.

umbra, -ae, f., *shadow, shade*.

umbrāculum, -i, n., *shadow*.

uterque, **utraque**, **utrumque**,
each (of two), both.

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife*.

vēnātor, -ōris, m., *hunter*.

vēr, **vēris**, n., *spring*.

vītis, -is, f., *vine*.

volucris, -is, f., *flying creature*,
bird.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

a, an, usually not translated.	alarm, v., <i>commoveō, terreō.</i>
abandon, <i>relinquō.</i>	alive, <i>vīvus.</i>
able (be), <i>possum.</i>	all, <i>omnis, tōtus.</i>
abode, <i>domicilium.</i>	allow, <i>patior.</i>
about, adv., <i>circiter.</i>	ally, <i>socius.</i>
about, prep., <i>dē, ad, circum.</i>	almost, <i>paene, prope, ferē.</i>
about to, expressed by fut. act. part.	alone, <i>sōlus, ūnus.</i>
above, <i>superus.</i>	already, <i>iam.</i>
abundance, <i>cōpia.</i>	also, <i>quoque.</i>
accept, <i>accipiō.</i>	although, <i>cum.</i>
acceptable, <i>grātus.</i>	always, <i>semper.</i>
accomplish, <i>cōficiō, efficiō.</i>	ambassador, <i>lēgātus.</i>
across, <i>trāns, in.</i>	among, <i>apud, inter.</i>
active, <i>ācer.</i>	ancient, <i>antīquus.</i>
adorn, <i>ōrnō.</i>	and, <i>et, ac, atque, -que.</i>
advance, <i>prōgredior.</i>	and so, <i>itaque.</i>
advise, <i>moneō.</i>	animal, <i>animal.</i>
affair, <i>rēs.</i>	announce, <i>nūntiō.</i>
Africa, <i>Āfrica.</i>	annoy, <i>vexō.</i>
after, conj., <i>postquam.</i>	annoying, <i>molestus.</i>
after, prep., <i>post.</i>	another, <i>alius.</i>
afterwards, <i>postea, deinde</i>	answer, <i>respondeō.</i>
against, <i>contrā, in.</i>	any, <i>ūllus, aliquis.</i>
age, <i>aetās.</i>	appearance, <i>forma.</i>
agreement, <i>condiciō.</i>	apple, <i>pōmum.</i>
agriculture, <i>agrīcultūra.</i>	appoint, <i>creō.</i>
aid, n., <i>auxilium.</i>	approach, n., <i>adventus.</i>
aid, v., <i>iuvō.</i>	approach, v., <i>adpropinquō, adeō.</i>
alarm, n., <i>tīmor.</i>	arms, <i>arma.</i>

army, <i>exercitus</i> .	bank, <i>rīpa</i> .
around, <i>circum</i> .	barbarians, <i>barbarī</i> .
arouse, <i>citō</i> .	barbarous, <i>barbarus</i> .
arrange, <i>cōstituō, instruō, ordinō</i> .	basket, <i>calathus</i> .
arrival, <i>adventus</i> .	battle, <i>proelium, pūgna</i> .
arrive, <i>pervenīō</i> .	be, <i>sum</i> .
arrogance, <i>superbia</i> .	be accustomed, <i>soleō</i> .
arrow, <i>sagitta</i> .	be afraid, <i>timeō, vereor</i> .
as possible, expressed by <i>quam</i> and <i>superl</i> .	be in command of, <i>praesum</i> .
ask, <i>petō, quaerō, rogō</i> .	be informed, <i>certior fiō</i> .
assail, <i>oppugnō</i> .	be powerful, <i>valeō</i> .
assemble, <i>conveniō, cōgō</i> .	be present, <i>intersum</i> .
assert, <i>cōfirmō</i> .	be wanting, <i>egeō</i> .
assume, <i>sūmō</i> .	be well, <i>valeō</i> .
at, abl. of time or place, locative case.	be without, <i>egeō</i> .
at first, <i>prīmō</i> .	bear, <i>ferō, portō</i> .
at last, <i>postrēmō, dēnique</i> .	bear back, <i>referō</i> .
at length, <i>tandem, dēnique</i> .	beast (wild), <i>fera</i> .
at once, <i>statim</i> .	beautiful, <i>pulcher</i> .
Athens, <i>Athēnae</i> .	because, <i>quia, quod</i> .
attack, n., <i>impetus</i> .	because of, <i>propter</i> .
attack, v., <i>oppugnō</i> .	become, <i>fiō</i> .
attempt, <i>cōnor, temptō</i> .	before, adv., <i>antē</i> .
attend (to), <i>cūrō</i> .	before, prep., <i>ante, prō</i> .
authority, <i>auctoritās</i> .	beg, <i>petō</i> .
avoid, <i>vītō</i> .	begin, <i>incipiō, ineō</i> .
away from, <i>ā</i> or <i>ab</i> with abl.	behind, <i>post</i> .
bad, <i>malus</i> .	Belgians, <i>Belgae</i> .
badge, <i>insigne</i> .	believe, <i>crēdō</i> .
baggage, <i>impedimenta</i> .	benefit, <i>prōsum</i> .
band, <i>manus</i> .	besiege, <i>oppugnō</i> .
	best, <i>optimus</i> .
	betray, <i>trādō</i> .
	better, <i>melior</i> .
	between, <i>inter</i> .

beyond, *extrā*.
 billow, *fluctus*.
 bind, *vinciō*.
 bird, *avis*.
 black, *niger*.
 blame, n., *culpa*.
 blame, v., *culpō*.
 blood, *sanguis*.
 blot out, *dēleō*.
 boat, *nāvigium*.
 body, *corpus*.
 bold, *audāx*.
 boldly, *audācter*.
 boldness, *audācia*.
 book, *liber*.
 booty, *praeda*.
 both . . . and, *et . . . et*.
 boundary, *fīnis*.
 boy, *puer*.
 brave, *fortis*.
 bravely, *fortiter*.
 bravery, *virtūs*.
 brevity, *brevitās*.
 bridge, *pōns*.
 brief, *brevis*.
 bright, *clārus*.
 bring, *ferō*.
 bring back, *reportō, referō*.
 bring down, *dēferō*.
 bring out, *effērō*.
 bring together, *cōnferō*.
 bring upon, *īnferō*.
 broad, *lātus*.
 brother, *frāter*.
 build, *aedificō*.

building, *aedificium*.
 burn, *cremō, incendō*.
 business, *negōtium*.
 but, *sed, autem*.
 by, *ā, ab*.
 by night, *noctū*.
 Caesar, *Caesar*.
 calamity, *calamitās*.
 call, *vocō, appellō*.
 call together, *convocō*.
 camp, *castra*.
 can, could, *possum*.
 captive, *captivus*.
 capture, *capio, occupō*.
 care, *cūra*.
 care for, *cūrō*.
 carefully, *diligenter*.
 carefulness, *diligentia*.
 carry, *portō, ferō*.
 carry back, *reportō, referō*.
 carry on, *gerō*.
 carry out of, *effērō*.
 cart, *carrus*.
 cause, n., *causa*.
 cause, v., *efficiō*.
 cavalry, *equitātus*.
 cease, *cessō*.
 censure, *culpō*.
 centurion, *centuriō*.
 certain, *certus*.
 certain one, *quādam*.
 certainly, *certē*.
 change, *mūtō*.
 Charles, *Carolus*.

check, *sustineō*.
 chief, *prīnceps*.
 children, *liberī*.
 choose, *dēligō, creō*.
 Cicero, *Cicerō*.
 Cimbri, *Cimbrī*.
 citadel, *arx*.
 citizen, *cīvis*.
 city, *urbs*.
 clear, *clārus*.
 client, *cliēns*.
 cliff, *rūpēs*.
 clothed, *indūtus*.
 cloud, *nūbēs*.
 cohort, *cohors*.
 collect, *cōgō, cōnferō*.
 come, *veniō*.
 come to, *pervenīō*.
 come together, *conveniō*.
 command, n., *imperium*.
 command, v., *imperō, iubeō*.
 command of (be in), *praesum*.
 commander-in-chief, *imperātor*.
 commit, *committō*.
 commonwealth, *rēspūblica*.
 companion, *comes*.
 compel, *cōgō*.
 complete, *cōficiō*.
 comrade, *comes*.
 conceal, *cēlō*.
 concerning, *dē*.
 condition, *condiciō*.
 confidence, *fidēs*.
 confirm, *cōnfirmō*.
 conquer, *superō, vincō*.

conqueror, *victor*.
 consider, *habeō*.
 conspire, *coniūrō*.
 consul, *cōnsul*.
 contain, *contineō*.
 contend, *contendō*.
 contrary to, *contrā*.
 Corinth, *Corinthus*.
 cottage, *casa*.
 country, *patria, finēs, rūs*.
 courage, *virtūs*.
 crime, *scelus*.
 cross, *trānseō*.
 crown, *corōna*.
 cry out, *exclāmō*.
 custodian, *custōs*.
 custom, *mōs*.

daily, *cotīdiē*.
 danger, *perīculum*.
 daughter, *filia*.
 day, *diēs*.
 daybreak, *prīma lūx*.
 dear, *cārus*.
 death, *mors*.
 decide, *cōstituō*.
 declare, *cōnfirmō*.
 decoration, *īnsigne*.
 deed, *rēs*.
 deep, *altus*.
 defeat, n., *calamitās*.
 defeat, v., *superō, vincō*.
 defend, *dēfendō*.
 defense of, *prō*.
 delay, n., *mora*.

delay, *v.*, *moror*.
 deliver (a speech), *habeō*.
 demand, *postulō*.
 dense, *dēnsus*.
 depart, *discēdō*, *exeō*.
 dependent, *cliēns*.
 depth, *altitūdō*.
 design, *cōnsilium*.
 desire, *cupiō*, *volō*.
 destroy, *dēlēō*.
 detain, *retineō*.
 determine, *cōstituō*.
 differ, *differō*.
 different, *dissimilis*.
 difficult, *difficilis*.
 difficulty, *difficultās*.
 diligence, *diligentia*.
 diligent, *diligēns*.
 diligently, *diligenter*.
 dinner, *cēna*.
 direction, *pars*.
 disaster, *calamitās*.
 disband, *dimitto*.
 discipline, *disciplīna*.
 discover, *reperiō*.
 dismiss, *dimitto*.
 dissimilar, *dissimilis*.
 disturb, *permovere*.
 ditch, *fossa*.
 do, *faciō*, *agō*.
 doubt, *dubitō*.
 doubtful, *dubius*.
 dove, *columba*.
 down from, *dē*.
 draw near, *adpropinquō*.

draw up, *instruō*.
 dread, *n.*, *timor*.
 dread, *v.*, *vereor*.
 drive, *agō*.
 during, *per*.
 dwell, *habitō*, *incolō*.
 dwelling, *aedificium*.
 each, *quisque*.
 each other, *suī*.
 eager, *ācer*.
 eager (be), *studeō*.
 eagerness, *studium*.
 eagle, *aquila*.
 earth, *terra*.
 easily, *facile*.
 easy, *facilis*.
 eight, *octō*.
 either . . . or, *aut . . . aut*.
 elect, *creō*.
 emperor, *imperātor*.
 empire, *imperium*.
 encourage, *hortor*.
 end, *finis*.
 endure, *patior*, *perferō*.
 enemy, *hostis*, *inimicus*.
 enjoy, *fruo*.
 enlist, *cōscribō*.
 enough, *sat*.
 enroll, *cōscribō*.
 enter, *ineō*.
 entire, *tōtus*.
 equal, *pār*.
 especially, *māximē*.
 establish, *cōfirmō*.

Etruscans, *Etruscī*.
ever, *umquam*.
every, *omnis*.
evil, *malus*.
excel, *superō, praestō*.
excellent, *optimus*.
except, *nisi, praeter*.
exclaim, *exclāmō*.
exercise, *exerceō*.
expect, *expectō*.
extend, *pateō, pertineō*.
eye, *oculus*.

faith, *fidēs*.
faithful, *fīdus*.
faithless, *perfidus*.
fall, *cadō*.
fame, *fāma*.
famous, *clārus, nōbilis*.
far, *longē*.
farewell, *valē, valēte*.
farmer, *agricola*.
farthest, *ultimus*.
father, *pater*.
fatherland, *patria*.
fault, *culpa*.
favor, n., *grātia*.
favor, v., *faveō*.
favorable, *secundus*.
fear, n., *timor*.
fear, v., *timeō, vereor*.
feel, *sentīō*.
few, *paucī*.
field, *ager*.
fierce, *ācer*.

fiercely, *ācriter*.
fight, n., *pūgna*.
fight, v., *pūgnō*.
fill, *compleō*.
finally, *dēnique*.
find, *find out*, *reperiō*.
finish, *cōficiō, perficiō*.
fire, *ignis*.
firm, *fīrmus*.
firmness, *cōstantia*.
first, *prīmus*.
fit, *idōneus*.
five, *quīnque*.
flee, *fugiō*.
fleet, *classis*.
flight, *fuga*.
fly, *volō*.
follow, *sequor*.
follow on, *īnsequor*.
food, *cibus*.
foot, *pēs*.
foot-soldier, *pedes*.
footstep, *vestigium*.
for, conj., *nam, enim*.
for, prep., *dē, prō*.
for a long time, *diū*.
forbid, *vetō*.
force, *vīs*.
forces, *cōpiae*.
forest, *silva*.
form, *forma*.
former, *prior*.
fortification, *mūnitiō*.
fortify, *mūniō*.
fortune, *fortūna*.

fountain, *fōns*.
 four, *quattuor*.
 fourth, *quārtus*.
 free, v., *liberō*.
 free, a., *liber*.
 freedom, *libertās*.
 frequent, *crēber*.
 friend, *amicus*.
 friendly, *amicus*, *amīce*.
 friendship, *amīcitiā*.
 frighten, *terreō*.
 from, *ā*, *ab*, *ē*, *ex*, *dē*.
 full, *plēnus*.
 furnish, *praebeō*.

Galba, *Galba*.
 garland, *corōna*.
 garrison, *praesidium*.
 gate, *porta*.
 Gaul, n., *Gallia*.
 Gaul, a., *Gallus*.
 general, *imperātor*.
 Geneva, *Genāva*.
 German, n., *Germānus*.
 German, a., *Germānus*.
 Germany, *Germānia*.
 get (dinner), *parō*.
 get possession of, *potior*.
 gift, *dōnum*.
 girl, *puella*.
 give, *dōnō*, *dō*.
 give up or over, *trādō*.
 gladly, *libenter*.
 glory, *glōria*, *honor*.
 go, *eō*.

go across, *trānseō*.
 go away, *abeō*.
 go back, *redeō*.
 go forth, *exeō*, *prōgredior*.
 go into, *ineō*.
 go to, *adeō*.
 god, *deus*.
 goddess, *dea*.
 going down, *occāsus*.
 gold, *aurum*.
 good, *bonus*.
 grain, *frūmentum*.
 great, *māgnus*.
 greater, *māior*.
 greatest, *māximus*.
 greatly, *māgnopere*.
 greatness, *māgnitūdō*.
 grief, *dolor*.
 guard, n., *custōs*, *praesidium*.
 guard, v., *custōdiō*, *dēfendō*.
 guide, *dux*.
 hand, *manus*.
 happen, *fiō*.
 happy, *fēlix*.
 harass, *vexō*.
 harbor, *portus*.
 hard, *dūrus*, *difficilis*.
 harm, *noceō*.
 harsh, *asper*.
 hasten, *properō*, *mātūrō*, *con-*
tendō.
 haughtiness, *superbia*.
 haughty, *superbus*.
 have, *habeō*.

he, *is*.
 head, *caput*.
 hear, *audiō*.
 heart, *animus*.
 heavy, *gravis*.
 heavily, *graviter*.
 height, *altitūdō*.
 helmet, *galea*.
 help, n., *auxilium*.
 help, v., *iuvō*.
 Helvetians, *Helvētīi*.
 hem in, *contineō*.
 hence, *hinc*.
 her, *suus, eius*.
 hesitate, *dubitō*.
 hide, *cēlō, abdō*.
 high, *altus*.
 highest, *summus*.
 hill, *collis*.
 himself, *suī, ipse*.
 hinder, *prohibeō, impediō*.
 hindrance, *impedimentum*.
 his, *suus, eius*.
 hold, *habeō, teneō*.
 hold back, *retineō*.
 hold together, *contineō*.
 home, *domus*.
 honor, *honor*.
 hope, n., *spēs*.
 hope, v., *spērō*.
 horse, *equus*.
 horseman, *eques*.
 hostage, *obses*.
 hostile, *inimicus*.
 hour, *hōra*.

house, *domus, domicilium*.
 how, *quam, quōmodō*.
 however, *autem, tamen*.
 how great, *quantus*.
 how many, *quot*.
 how much, *quantus*.
 how often, *quotiēns*.
 humble, *humilis*.
 hurl, *iaciō*.
 hurl back, *reiciō*.
 hurl together, *coniciō*.
 hurry, *properō*.

I, *ego*.
 if, *sī*.
 if not, *nisi*.
 immediately, *statim*.
 impede, *impediō*.
 in, *in*.
 in order that, *ut*.
 in order that not, *nē*.
 in vain, *frustrā*.
 incite, *incitō*.
 indeed, *quidem*.
 industriously, *diligenter*.
 industry, *diligentia*.
 infirm, *infirmus*.
 inflict punishment on, *supplicium sūmō dē*.
 influence, n., *auctoritās, grātia*.
 influence, v., *addūcō, permoveō*.
 inform, *certiōrem facere*.
 inhabit, *habitō, incolō*.
 inhabitant, *incola*.
 injure, *noceō*.

injury, *iniūria*.
 inner, *interior*.
 instruction, *disciplīna*.
 into, *in*
 intrust, *committō*.
 invite, *vocō*.
 island, *īnsula*.
 it, *id*.
 Italy, *Ītalia*.
 its, *suus, eius*.
 itself, *suī*.

javelin, *pīlum*.
 join battle, *proelium committō*.
 journey, *iter*.
 judge, n., *iūdex*.
 judge, v., *iūdicō*.
 Julia, *Iūlia*.
 just now, *nūper*.

keen, *ācer*.
 keep, *custōdiō*.
 keep back, *retineō*
 keep from, *prohibeō*.
 keep in, *contineō*
 keeper, *custōs*.
 kill, *interficiō, necō*.
 king, *rēx*.
 kingdom, *rēgnum*.
 knight, *eques*.
 know, *sciō, cognōscō*.

labor, n., *labor*.
 labor, v., *labōrō*.
 lack, n., *inopia*.

lack, v., *egeō*.
 lady, *domina*.
 lake, *lacus*.
 land, *terra*.
 language, *lingua*.
 large, *māgnus*.
 larger, *māior*.
 last, *extrēmus*.
 lately, *nūper*.
 Latin, *Latīnus*.
 law, *lēx*.
 lay waste, *vāstō*.
 lazy, *piger*.
 lead, *dūcō*.
 lead across, *trādūcō*.
 lead back, *redūcō*.
 lead down, *dēdūcō*.
 lead out, *ēdūcō*.
 lead through, *perdūcō*.
 lead to, *addūcō*.
 leader, *dux*.
 leap down, *dēsiliō*.
 learn, *cognōscō*.
 least, *minimus*.
 leave, depart from, *discēdō*.
 leave behind, abandon, *relin-
quō*.
 left, *sinister*.
 legion, *legiō*.
 length, *longitūdō*.
 less, *minor*.
 lest, *nē*.
 letter, *epistula, littera*.
 liberate, *liberō*.
 liberty, *libertās*.

lie open, *pateō*.
 lieutenant, *lēgātus*.
 life, *vīta*.
 light, n., *lūx*.
 light, adj., *levis*.
 like, *similis*.
 like, love, *amō*.
 limit, *finis*.
 line of battle, *aciēs*.
 line of march, *agmen*.
 little, *parvus*.
 live, *habitō, vivō, incolō*.
 living, *vivus*.
 location, *locus*.
 long, adj., *longus*.
 long, adv., *diū*.
 long for, *dēsiderō*.
 look after, *cūrō*.
 look at, *spectō*.
 lord, *dominus*.
 lose, *āmittō*.
 love, *amō*.
 low, *humilis, inferus*.
 lower, *inferior*.
 lucky, *fēlix*.

maiden, *virgō*.
 make, *faciō, creō*.
 make war upon, *bellum inferō*.
 man, *homō, vir*.
 manliness, *virtūs*.
 many, *multī*.
 march, n., *iter*.
 march, v., *iter facere*.
 Marcus, Mark, *Mārcus*.

marsh, *palūs*.
 master, *dominus*.
 matter, *rēs, negōtium*.
 mature, *mātūrus*.
 meet, *occurrō*.
 memory, *memoria*.
 merchant, *mercātor*.
 message, *nūntius*.
 messenger, *nūntius*.
 middle, *medius*.
 midnight, *media nox*.
 mile, *mīlle passus*.
 miles, *mīlia passuum*.
 mind, *animus, mēns*.
 mine, *meus*.
 mistress, *domina*.
 money, *pecūnia*.
 monster, *mōnstrum*.
 month, *mēnsis*.
 moon, *lūna*.
 more, *plūs, magis*.
 most, *plūrimus*.
 mother, *māter*.
 mound, *agger*.
 mountain, *mōns*.
 move, *moveō*.
 move forward, *prōmoveō*.
 moved, *commōtus*.
 much, *multus*.
 multitude, *multitūdō*.
 must, *dēbeō*.
 my, *meus*.
 myself, *meī*.
 name, n., *nōmen*.

name, v., <i>appellō</i> .	number, <i>numerus</i> .
nation, <i>nātiō</i> .	numerous, <i>crēber</i> .
native land, <i>patria</i> .	
nature, <i>nātūra</i> .	obey, <i>pāreō</i> .
near, <i>prope</i> , <i>ad</i> .	occupy, <i>occupō</i> .
nearer, <i>propior</i> .	of (concerning), <i>dē</i> .
nearest, <i>proximus</i> .	of, sign of gen.
nearly, <i>ferē</i> , <i>paene</i> .	offer, <i>praebeō</i> .
need, n., <i>inopia</i> .	often, <i>saepe</i> .
need, v., <i>egeō</i> .	old, <i>vetus</i> .
neighbor, <i>fīnitimus</i> .	on, <i>in</i> .
neighboring, <i>fīnitimus</i> .	on account of, <i>propter</i> .
neither, conj., <i>neque</i> or <i>nec</i> .	on all sides, <i>undique</i> .
neither . . . nor, <i>neque</i> (<i>nec</i>)	once, <i>olim</i> .
. . . <i>neque</i> (<i>nec</i>).	one, <i>ūnus</i> .
neither, adj., <i>neuter</i> .	one . . . another, <i>alius</i> . . .
never, <i>numquam</i> .	<i>alius</i> .
nevertheless, <i>tamen</i> .	one hundred, <i>centum</i> .
new, <i>novus</i> .	only, <i>sōlus</i> .
next, <i>proximus</i> .	opportunity, <i>facultās</i> , <i>potestās</i> .
night, <i>nox</i> .	oppose, <i>resistō</i> .
nine, <i>novem</i> .	or, <i>aut</i> , <i>vel</i> .
no, none, <i>nūllus</i> .	oracle, <i>ōrāculum</i> .
no one, <i>nēmō</i> .	oration, <i>ōrātiō</i> .
noble, <i>nōbilis</i> .	orator, <i>ōrātor</i> .
noise, <i>clāmor</i> .	order, <i>imperō</i> , <i>iubeō</i> .
noon, <i>merīdiēs</i> .	ornament, <i>ōrnāmentum</i> .
nor, <i>neque</i> or <i>nec</i> .	O that, <i>utinam</i> .
not, <i>nōn</i> .	other, <i>alius</i> .
not even, <i>nē</i> . . . <i>quidem</i> .	other (of two), <i>alter</i> .
not only . . . but also, <i>nōn</i>	others (the), <i>reliqui</i> .
<i>solum</i> . . . <i>sed etiam</i> .	ought, <i>dēbeō</i> .
not yet, <i>nōndum</i> .	our, <i>noster</i> .
nothing, <i>nihil</i> or <i>nīl</i> .	our men, <i>nostrī</i> .
now, <i>nunc</i> , <i>iam</i> .	ourselves, <i>nōs</i> .

out of, *ē, ex*.
 outcry, *clāmōr*.
 outside, *extrā*.
 over, *trāns, in*.
 overcome, *superō, vincō*.
 overtake, *cōnsequor*.
 owe, *dēbeō*.
 own (his, her, its, their), *suus*.

pace, *passus*.
 pain, *dolor*.
 part, *pars*.
 passage, *iter*.
 peace, *pāx*.
 people, *populus*.
 perceive, *sentiō*.
 peril, *perīculum*.
 permit, *patior*.
 perseverance, *persevērantia*.
 persuade, *persuādeō*.
 pertain, *pertineō*.
 picture, *pīctūra*.
 pirate, *pīrāta*.
 pitch (camp), *pōnō*.
 place, *locus*.
 place, arrange, *conlocō*.
 place, put, *pōnō*.
 place in command, *praefficiō*.
 plan, *cōnsilium*.
 please, *placeō*.
 pleasing, *grātus*.
 pledge, *fidēs*.
 plenty, *cōpia*.
 plow, *arō*.
 plunder, *praeda*.

poet, *poēta*.
 point out, *dēmōnstrō*.
 Pompeii, *Pompēiī*.
 poor, *miser*.
 port, *portus*.
 possession (get), *potior*.
 possible (as), *quam* with superl.
 power, *polestās, imperium*.
 power (royal), *rēgnum*.
 powerful, *potēns*.
 powerful (be), *valeō*.
 praise, n., *laus*.
 praise, v., *laudō*.
 prefer, *mālō*.
 prepare for, *parō*.
 present, *dōnum*.
 presently, *mox*.
 press hard, *premō*.
 prevent, *prohibeō*.
 pride, *superbia*.
 prize, *praemium*.
 promise, *polliceor*.
 protection, *praesidium*.
 proud, *superbus*.
 province, *prōvincia*.
 public, *pūblicus*.
 punishment, *poena, supplicium*.
 pure, *pūrus*.
 pursue, *cōnsequor*.
 put on, *induō*.
 put to flight, *fugō*.

queen, *rēgina*.
 quick, *celer*.
 quickly, *celeriter*.

quite, expressed by the comp.
degree.

rampart, *vāllum*, *agger*.

rank, *ōrdō*.

rather (comparative).

reach, *pervenīō*, *pertineō*.

read, *legō*.

ready, *parātus*.

rear, *novissimū agmen*.

reason, *causa*.

receive, *accipiō*.

recently, *nūper*.

reckon, *putō*.

refuse, *recūsō*.

region, *regiō*.

reign, n., *rēgnum*.

reign, v., *rēgnō*.

remain, *maneo*.

remaining, *reliquus*.

reply, *respondeō*.

report, n., *fāma*, *rūmor*.

report, v., *nūntiō*, *referō*.

republic, *rēspūblica*.

repulse, *reiciō*.

reputation, *fāma*.

require, *postulō*.

rescue, *ēripiō*.

resist, *resistō*.

resolve, *cōstituō*.

respond, *respondeō*.

rest (the), *reliqui*.

rest (of), *reliquus*.

restrain, *retineō*, *contineō*.

retainer, *cliēns*.

retreat, *sē recipere*.

return, *redeō*.

reward, *praemium*.

Rhine, *Rhēnus*.

right, *dexter*.

ripe, *mātūrus*.

river, *flūmen*.

road, *via*, *iter*.

rock, *saxum*.

Roman, *Rōmānus*.

Roman (a), *Rōmānus*.

Rome, *Rōma*.

rose, *rosa*.

rough, *asper*, *dūrus*.

rout, *fugō*.

route, *iter*.

row, *ōrdō*.

rude, *barbarus*.

rule, *regō*.

rumor, *fāma*, *rūmor*.

run, *currō*.

run away, *fugiō*.

run towards, *occurrō*.

safe, *tūtus*, *incolumis*.

safety, *salūs*.

said he, said she, *inquit*.

sail, *nāvigō*.

sailor, *nauta*.

sake of, *causā*.

same, *idem*.

savage, *barbarus*.

save, *servō*.

say, *dicō*.

scarcity, *inopia*.

school, *lūdus*.
 scout, *explōrātor*.
 sea, *mare*.
 second, *secundus*.
 see, *videō*.
 seek, *petō*.
 seem, *videor*.
 seize, *occupō, rapiō*.
 select, *dēligō*.
 self, *ipse*.
 send, *mittō*.
 send away, *āmittō*.
 send back, *remittō*.
 send forward, *praemittō*.
 serious, *gravis*.
 seriously, *graviter*.
 serve, *serviō*.
 set fire, *incendō*.
 set out, *proficīscor*.
 setting, *occāsus*.
 seven, *septem*.
 severe, *gravis*.
 severely, *graviter*.
 shape, *forma*.
 sharp, *ācer*.
 sharply, *ācriter*.
 she, *ea*.
 shield, *scūtum*.
 ship, *nāvis*.
 short, *brevis*.
 shortness, *brevitās*.
 shout, *clāmor*.
 show, *mōnstrō, doceō*.
 shun, *vītō*.
 shut in, *contineō*.

Sicily, *Sicilia*.
 side, *latus, pars*.
 signal, *signum*.
 since, *cum*.
 single, *singulī*.
 sister, *soror*.
 sit, *sedeō*.
 six, *sex*.
 size, *māgnitūdō*.
 slain, *interfectus*.
 slaughter, *caedēs*.
 slave, *servus*.
 slavery, *servitūs*.
 slender, *gracilis*.
 small, *parvus*.
 snatch, *rapiō*.
 snatch (away), *ēripiō*.
 so, *ita, sic, tam*.
 so great, *tantus*.
 so many, *tot*.
 so much, *tantus*.
 so that, *ut*.
 soldier, *mīles*.
 some, *aliquī, quī*.
 some one, *aliquis, quis*.
 some . . . others, *aliī . . . aliī*.
 something, *aliquid, quid*.
 somewhat, *paulum*.
 son, *filius*.
 soon, *mox*.
 sorrow, *dolor*.
 space, *spatium*.
 Spain, *Hispania*.
 Spanish, *Hispaniēnsis*.

spare, *parcō*.
 speak, *dicō, loquor*.
 spear, *pīlum*.
 speech, *ōrātiō*.
 speed, *celeritās*.
 spirited, *ācer*.
 spring, *fōns*.
 spur, *calcar*.
 spy, *explōrātor*.
 stand, *stō*.
 standard, *sīgnum*.
 standard-bearer, *sīgnifer*.
 state, *cīvitās, rēspūblica*.
 station, *conlocō*.
 stay, *maneō*.
 steadiness, *cōstantia*.
 step, *passus*.
 stir up, *citō*.
 stone, *lapis*.
 storm, *oppūgnō*.
 story, *fābula*.
 stray, *errō*.
 street, *via*.
 strength, *vīs*.
 strengthen, *cōnfirmō*.
 strong, *fīrmus, validus*.
 strong (be), *valeō*.
 struggle, *contendō*.
 sturdy, *validus*.
 such, *tālis, tantus*.
 suddenly, *subitō*.
 sufficiently, *satis*.
 suitable, *idōneus*.
 summer, *aestās*.
 summon, *vocō, convocō*.

sun, *sōl*.
 surely, *certē*.
 surpass, *superō, praestō*.
 surrender, *n., deditiō*.
 surrender, *v., trādō*.
 surround, *circumveniō*.
 sustain, *sustineō*.
 swamp, *palūs*.
 swift, *celer, vēlōx*.
 swiftly, *celeriter*.
 swiftness, *celeritās*.
 sword, *gladius*.
 taint, *maculō*.
 take, *capiō*.
 take back, *recipiō*.
 take by storm, *expūgnō*.
 take part in, *intersum*.
 take possession of, *occupō*.
 take up, *sūmō*.
 tall, *altus*.
 task, *opus*.
 teach, *doceō*.
 teacher, *magister*.
 tell, *narrō*.
 tempest, *tempestās*.
 temple, *templum*.
 ten, *decem*.
 tenth, *decimus*.
 terms, *condiciō*.
 terrify, *terreō*.
 territory, *finēs*.
 terror, *terror*.
 than, *quam*.
 thanks, *grātia*.

that, conj., *ut* ; not expressed
after verbs of saying and the
like.

that, demon. pron., *is, iste, ille*.

that, rel. pron., *quā*.

that not, *nē*.

the, not expressed.

their, gen. plur. of *is*.

their own, *suus*.

then, at that time, *tum*.

then, in the next place, *deinde*.

there, as expletive not ex-
pressed.

there, in that place, *ibi*.

therefore, *itaque*.

they, *eī*.

thick, *dēnsus*.

thing, *rēs*.

think, *arbitror, putō*.

third, *tertius*.

this, *hic, is*.

thou, *tū*.

though, *cum*.

thousand, *mille*.

three, *trēs*.

through, *per*.

throw, *iaciō*.

throw back, *reiciō*.

thus, *sic, ita*.

thy, *tuus*.

tie, *vinciō*.

time, *tempus*.

timid, *timidus*.

tired out, *dēfessus*.

to, *ad*.

to-day, *hodiē*.

too, *quoque*.

tooth, *dēns*.

top of, *summus*.

tower, *turris*.

town, *oppidum*.

trace, *vestigium*.

trader, *mercātor*.

train, *exerceō*.

training, *disciplīna*.

treacherous, *perfidus*.

tree, *arbor*.

trench, *fossa*.

troops, *cōpiae*.

trouble, *vexō*.

troublesome, *molestus*.

true, *vērus*.

trumpet, *tuba*.

trust, *crēdō*.

try, *cōnor, temptō*.

twenty, *vīgintī*.

two, *duo*.

under, *sub*.

understand, *intelligō*.

undertake, *suscipiō*.

unfriendly, *inimicus*.

unhappy, *infēlix*.

unharmed, *incolumis*.

unless, *nisi*.

unlike, *dissimilis*.

unwilling (be), *nōlō*.

up to, *sub*.

upper, *superior*.

urge, *hortor*.

us, *nōs*.

use, *ūtor*.

useful, *ūtilis*.

useless, *inūtilis*.

vain (*in*), *frustrā*.

valley, *vallēs*.

valor, *virtūs*.

Vergil, *Vergilius*.

very (superlative), *ipse*.

very little, *minimē*.

very much, *māximē*.

very well, *optimē*.

victor, *victor*.

victory, *victōria*.

village, *vīcus*.

virtue, *virtūs*.

visit, *adeō*.

voice, *vōx*.

wage, *gerō*.

wagon, *carrus*.

wait, *expectō*.

wall, *mūrus*.

wander, *errō*.

want, *inopia*.

war, *bellum*.

warn, *moneō*.

watch, *vigilia*, *custōs*.

water, *aqua*.

wave, *fluctus*.

way, *via*, *iter*.

we, *nōs*.

weak, *infirmus*.

weapon, *telum*.

wear, *gerō*.

weary, *dēfessus*.

weighty, *gravis*.

well, *bene*.

well known, *nōbilis*.

what, *quid*.

when, *ubi*, *cum*.

where, *ubi*.

wherefore, *cūr*.

which, *quī*.

which (of two), *uter*.

while, expressed by a participle.

white, *albus*.

whither, *quō*.

who, *quī*, *quis*.

whole, *tōtus*.

whose, *cuius* ; *quōrum*, *quārum*,
quōrum.

why, *cūr*.

wicked, *malus*.

wide, *lātus*.

widely, *lātē*.

width, *lātitudō*.

wild beast, *fera*.

willing (be), *volō*.

willingly, *libenter*.

win (a victory), *reportō*.

wind, *ventus*.

wing, *āla*.

wing (of an army), *cornū*.

winter, *hiems*.

wisdom, *cōsiliū*.

wish, *cupiō*, *volō*.

with, *cum*.

withdraw, *sē recipere*, *exeō*.

within, *intrā*.
without, *sine*.
withstand, *sustineō*.
witness, *spectō*.
woman, *fēmina*.
wonderful, *mīrus*.
word, *verbum*.
work, n., *labor, opus*.
work, v., *labōrō*.
work out, *efficiō*.
worn out, *dēfessus*.
worse, *peior*.
worst, *pessimus*.
worthy, *dignus*.
would that, *utinam*.

wound, n., *vulnus*.
wound, v., *vulnerō*.
wretched, *miser*.
write, *scribō*.
wrong, *iniūria*.

year, *annus*.
yes, *certē, vērō*.
yet, *tamen*.
yoke, *iugum*.
you, *tū, vōs*.
your, *tuus, vester*.
yourself, *tuā*.

zeal, *studium*.

